### Third United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea

1973-1982 Concluded at Montego Bay, Jamaica on 10 December 1982

# Document:- A/CONF.62/WP.10/Rev.3

#### **Informal Composite Negotiating Text, revision 3**

Extract from the Official Records of the Third United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea, Volume VIII (Informal Composite Negotiating Text, Sixth Session)





### UNITED NATIONS



# THIRD CONFERENCE ON THE LAW OF THE SEA

Distr.
GENERAL

A/CONF.62/WP.10/Rev.3\*
22 September 1980

Original: ENGLISH

Resumed ninth session Geneva, 28 July to 29 August 1980

## DRAFT CONVENTION ON THE LAW OF THE SEA (INFORMAL TEXT)

| Contents   | Page |
|--|------|
| Explanatory Memorandum by the President of the Conference  | xix  |
| PART I. USE OF TERMS   | 1    |
| Article 1. Use of terms  | . 1  |
| PART II. TERRITORIAL SEA AND CONTIGUOUS ZONE   | 2    |
| SECTION 1. GENERAL   | 2    |
| Article 2. Legal status of the territorial sea, of the air space over the territorial sea and of its bed and subsoil | . 2  |
| SECTION 2. LIMITS OF THE TERRITORIAL SEA   | . 2  |
| Article 3. Breadth of the territorial sea  | . 2  |
| Article 4. Outer limit of the territorial sea  | . 2  |
| Article 5. Normal baseline   | . 2  |
| Article 6. Reefs   | . 2  |
| Article 7. Straight baselines  | . 2  |
| Article 8. Internal waters   | . 3  |
| Article 9. Mouths of rivers  | . 3  |
| Article 10. Bays   | . 3  |
| Article 11. Ports  | . 4  |
| Article 12. Roadsteads   | . 4  |
| Article 13. Low-tide elevations  | •    |

<sup>\*</sup> Re-issued for technical reasons. Document A/CONF.62/WP.10/Rev.3/Add.1 of 28 August 1980, Explanatory Memorandum by the President of the Conference, is incorporated.

|   | Page |
|---|------|
| Article 14. Combination of methods for determining baselines  | 5    |
| Article 15. Delimitation of the territorial sea between States with opposite or adjacent coasts   | 5    |
| Article 16. Charts and lists of geographical co-ordinates   | 5    |
| SECTION 3. INNOCENT PASSAGE IN THE TERRITORIAL SEA  | 6    |
| SUBSECTION A. RULES APPLICABLE TO ALL SHIPS   | 6    |
| Article 17. Right of innocent passage   | 6    |
| Article 18. Meaning of passage  | 6    |
| Article 19. Meaning of innocent passage   | 6    |
| Article 20. Submarines and other underwater vehicles  | 7    |
| Article 21. Laws and regulations of the coastal State relating to innocent passage  | 7    |
| Article 22. Sea lanes and traffic separation schemes in the territorial sea   | 8    |
| Article 23. Foreign nuclear-powered ships and ships carrying nuclear or other inherently dangerous or noxious substances                  | 8    |
| Article 24. Duties of the coastal State   | 8    |
| Article 25. Rights of protection of the coastal State   | 9    |
| Article 26. Charges which may be levied upon foreign ships  | 9    |
| SUBSECTION B. RULES APPLICABLE TO MERCHANT SHIPS AND GOVERNMENT SHIPS OPERATED FOR COMMERCIAL PURPOSES                                    | 9    |
| Article 27. Criminal jurisdiction on board a foreign ship   | 9    |
| Article 28. Civil jurisdiction in relation to foreign ships   | 10   |
| SUBSECTION C. RULES APPLICABLE TO WARSHIPS AND OTHER GOVERNMENT SHIPS OPERATED FOR NON-COMMERCIAL PURPOSES                                | 10   |
| Article 29. Definition of warships  | 10   |
| Article 30. Non-observance by warships of the laws and regulations of the coastal State   | 10   |
| Article 31. Responsibility of the flag State for damage caused by a warship or other government ship operated for non-commercial purposes | 11   |
| Article 32. Immunities of warships and other government ships operated for non-commercial purposes  | 11   |

|      |   | rago |
|------|---|------|
|      | SECTION 4. CONTIGUOUS ZONE  | 11   |
|      | Article 33. Contiguous zone   | 11   |
| PART | III. STRAITS USED FOR INTERNATIONAL NAVIGATION  | 12   |
|      | SECTION 1. GENERAL  | 12   |
|      | Article 34. Legal status of waters forming straits used for international navigation  | 12   |
|      | Article 35. Scope of this Part  | 12   |
|      | Article 36. High seas routes or routes through exclusive economic zones through straits used for international navigation                 | 12   |
|      | SECTION 2. TRANSIT PASSAGE  | 12   |
|      | Article 37. Scope of this section   | 12   |
|      | Article 38. Right of transit passage  | 13   |
|      | Article 39. Duties of ships and aircraft during their passage   | 13   |
|      | Article 40. Research and survey activities  | 14   |
|      | Article 41. Sea lanes and traffic separation schemes in straits used for international navigation   | 14   |
|      | Article 42. Laws and regulations of States bordering straits relating to transit passage  | 15   |
|      | Article 43. Navigation and safety aids and other improvements and the prevention, reduction and control of pollution                      | 15   |
|      | Article 44. Duties of States bordering straits  | 15   |
|      | SECTION 3. INNOCENT PASSAGE   | 16   |
|      | Article 45. Innocent passage  | 16   |
| PART | IV. ARCHIPELAGIC STATES   | 17   |
|      | Article 46. Use of terms  | 17   |
|      | Article 47. Archipelagic baselines  | 17   |
|      | Article 48. Measurement of the breadth of the territorial sea, the contiguous zone, the exclusive economic zone and the continental shelf | 18   |
|      | Article 49. Legal status of archipelagic waters, of the air space over archipelagic waters, and of their bed and subsoil                  | 18   |
|      | Article 50. Delimitation of internal waters   | 18   |

|         |                           |  | Page       |
|---------|---------------------------|--|------------|
|         | Article 51. existing subm | Existing agreements, traditional fishing rights and marine cables  | 18         |
|         | Article 52.               | Right of innocent passage  | 19         |
|         | Article 53.               | Right of archipelagic sea lanes passage  | 19         |
|         | research and and laws and | Duties of ships and aircraft during their passage, survey activities, duties of the archipelagic State regulations of the archipelagic State relating to sea lanes passage | 20         |
| PART V. | EXCLUSIVE I               | ECONOMIC ZONE  | 21         |
|         | Article 55.               | Specific legal régime of the exclusive economic zone   | 21         |
|         |                           | Rights, jurisdiction and duties of the coastal State sive economic zone  | 21         |
|         | Article 57.               | Breadth of the exclusive economic zone   | 21         |
|         |                           | Rights and duties of other States in the exclusive   | 21         |
|         | attribution of            | Basis for the resolution of conflicts regarding the of rights and jurisdiction in the exclusive economic   | 22         |
|         |                           | Artificial islands, installations and structures in economic zone  | 22         |
|         | Article 61.               | Conservation of the living resources   | 23         |
| ,       | Article 62.               | Utilization of the living resources  | 24         |
|         | of two or mon             | Stocks occurring within the exclusive economic zones re coastal States or both within the exclusive economic rea beyond and adjacent to it                                 | 25         |
|         | Article 64.               | Highly migratory species   | 25         |
|         | Article 65.               | Marine mammals   | 25         |
|         | Article 66.               | Anadromous stocks  | 2 <b>6</b> |
|         | Article 67.               | Catadromous species  | 26         |
|         | Article 68.               | Sedentary species  | 27         |
|         | Article 69.               | Right of land-locked States  | 27         |
|         | Article 70. characterist  | Right of States with special geographical ics  | 28         |
|         | Amticle 71                | Non-applicability of articles 69 and 70  | 29         |

|  | Page       |
|--|------------|
| Article 72. Restrictions on transfer of rights   | 29         |
| Article 73. Enforcement of laws and regulations of the coastal State   | 29         |
| Article 74. Delimitation of the exclusive economic zone between States with opposite or adjacent coasts                    | <b>3</b> 0 |
| Article 75. Charts and lists of geographical co-ordinates  | <b>3</b> 0 |
| PART VI. CONTINENTAL SHELF   | 31         |
| Article 76. Definition of the continental shelf  | 31         |
| Article 77. Rights of the coastal State over the continental shelf   | <b>3</b> 2 |
| Article 78. Legal status of the superjacent waters and air space and the rights and freedoms of other States               | <b>3</b> 2 |
| Article 79. Submarine cables and pipelines on the continental shelf  | 33         |
| Article 80. Artificial islands, installations and structures on the continental shelf                                      | 33         |
| Article 81. Drilling on the continental shelf  | 33         |
| Article 82. Payments and contributions with respect to the exploitation of the continental shelf beyond 200 nautical miles | 33         |
| Article 83. Delimitation of the continental shelf between States with opposite or adjacent coasts                          | 34         |
| Article 84. Charts and lists of geographical co-ordinates  | 34         |
| Article 85. Tunnelling   | 34         |
| PART VII. HIGH SEAS  | <b>3</b> 5 |
| SECTION 1. GENERAL   | 35         |
| Article 86. Application of the provisions of this Part   | 35         |
| Article 87. Freedom of the high seas   | <b>3</b> 5 |
| Article 88. Reservation of the high seas for peaceful purposes   | <b>3</b> 5 |
| Article 89. Invalidity of claims of sovereignty over the high seas   | 35         |
| Article 90. Right of navigation  | 35         |
| Article 91. Nationality of ships   | 36         |

|  | Page       |
|--|------------|
| Article 92. Status of ships  | 36         |
| Article 93. Ships flying the flag of the United Nations, its specialized agencies and the International Atomic Energy Agency | 36         |
| Article 94. Duties of the flag State   | 36         |
| Article 95. Immunity of warships on the high seas  | 37         |
| Article 96. Immunity of ships used only on government non-commercial service   | 37         |
| Article 97. Penal jurisdiction in matters of collision   | 37         |
| Article 98. Duty to render assistance  | <b>3</b> 8 |
| Article 99. Prohibition of the transport of slaves   | <b>3</b> 8 |
| Article 100. Duty to co-operate in the repression of piracy  | <b>3</b> 8 |
| Article 101. Definition of piracy  | <b>3</b> 8 |
| Article 102. Piracy by a warship, government ship or government aircraft whose crew has mutinied                             | <b>3</b> 9 |
| Article 103. Definition of a pirate ship or aircraft   | 39         |
| Article 104. Retention or loss of the nationality of a pirate ship or aircraft   | 39         |
| Article 105. Seizure of a pirate ship or aircraft  | <b>3</b> 9 |
| Article 106. Liability for seizure without adequate grounds  | 39         |
| Article 107. Ships and aircraft which are entitled to seize on account of piracy   | 40         |
| Article 108. Illicit traffic in narcotic drugs or psychotropic substances  | 40         |
| Article 109. Unauthorized broadcasting from the high seas  | 40         |
| Article 110. Right of visit  | 40         |
| Article Ill. Right of hot pursuit  | 41         |
| Article 112. Right to lay submarine cables and pipelines   | 42         |
| Article 113. Breaking or injury of a submarine cable or pipeline.  | 42         |
| Article 114. Breaking or injury by owners of a submarine cable or pipeline of another submarine cable or pipeline            | 42         |
| Article 115. Indemnity for loss incurred in avoiding injury to a submarine cable or pipeline                                 | 43         |

|   | Page |
|---|------|
| SECTION 2. HANAGEMENT AND CONSERVATION OF THE LIVING RESOURCES OF THE HIGH SEAS   | 43   |
| Article 116. Right to fish on the high seas   | 43   |
| Article 117. Duty of States to adopt with respect to their nationals measures for the conservation of the living resources of the high seas | 43   |
| Article 113. Co-operation of States in the management and conservation of living resources  | 43   |
| Article 119. Conservation of the living resources of the high seas  | 43   |
| Article 120. Marine mammals   | 44   |
| PART VIII. RÉGIRE OF ISLANDS  | 45   |
| Article 121. Régime of islands  | 45   |
| PART IX. ENCLOSED OR SEHI-ENCLOSED SEAS   | 46   |
| Article 122. Definition   | 46   |
| Article 123. Co-operation of States bordering enclosed or semi-enclosed seas  | 46   |
| PART X. RIGHT OF ACCESS OF LAND-LOCKED STATES TO AND FROM THE SEA AND FREEDOM OF TRANSIT  | 47   |
| Article 124. Use of terms   | 47   |
| Article 125. Right of access to and from the sea and freedom of transit   | 47   |
| Article 126. Exclusion of application of the most-favoured-nation clause  | 48   |
| Article 127. Customs duties, taxes and other charges  | 48   |
| Article 126. Free zones and other customs facilities  | 48   |
| Article 129. Co-operation in the construction and improvement of means of transport   | 48   |
| Article 130. Heasures to avoid or eliminate delays or other difficulties of a technical nature in traffic in transit                        | 48   |
| Article 131. Equal treatment in maritime ports  | 48   |
| Article 152. Grant of greater transit facilities  | 48   |

|      |                               |  | Рале |
|------|-------------------------------|--|------|
| PART | XI. THE AREA .                | ••••••••••••••••••                                       | 49   |
|      | SECTION 1. GEN                | TERAL  | 49   |
|      | Article 133.                  | Use of terms   | 49   |
|      | Article 134.                  | Scope of this Part                                       | 49   |
|      | Article 135.                  | Legal status of the superjacent waters and air space     | 49   |
|      | SECTION 2. PRI                | INCIPLES GOVERNING THE AREA                              | 50   |
|      | Article 136.                  | Common heritage of mankind                               | 50   |
|      | Article 137.                  | Legal status of the Area and its resources               | 50   |
|      | Article 138.                  | General conduct of States in relation to the Area        | 50   |
|      | Article 139.<br>damage        | Responsibility to ensure compliance and liability for    | 50   |
|      | Article 140.                  | Benefit of mankind                                       | 51   |
|      | Article 141.                  | Use of the Area exclusively for peaceful purposes        | 51   |
|      | Article 142.                  | Rights and legitimate interests of coastal States        | 51   |
|      | SECTION 3. CON                | DUCT OF ACTIVITIES IN THE AREA                           | 52   |
|      | Article 143.                  | Marine scientific research                               | 52   |
|      | Article 144.                  | Transfer of technology                                   | 52   |
|      | Article 145.                  | Protection of the marine environment                     | 53   |
|      | Article 146.                  | Protection of human life                                 | 53   |
|      | Article 147.<br>marine enviro | Accommodation of activities in the Area and in the nment | 53   |
|      |                               | Participation of developing States in activities in      | 54   |
|      | Article 149.                  | Archaeological and historical objects                    | 54   |
|      | SECTION 4. DEV                | ELOPIENT OF RESOURCES OF THE AREA                        | 55   |
|      | Article 150.                  | Policies relating to activities in the Area              | 55   |
|      | Article 151.                  | Production policies                                      | 56   |
|      | Article 152.                  | Exercise of power by the Authority                       | 57   |
|      | Article 155.                  | System of exploration and exploitation                   | 58   |

|  | <u>Page</u> |
|--|-------------|
| Article 154. Periodic review   | 59          |
| Article 155. The Review Conference   | 59          |
| SECTION 5. THE AUTHORITY   | 61          |
| SUBSECTION A. GENERAL  | 61          |
| Article 156. Establishment of the Authority  | 61          |
| Article 157. Nature and fundamental principles of the Authority                                  | 61          |
| Article 158. Organs of the Authority   | 61          |
| SUBSECTION B. THE ASSEMBLY   | 62          |
| Article 159. Composition, procedure and voting   | 62          |
| Article 160. Powers and functions  | 63          |
| SUBSECTION C. THE COUNCIL  | 65          |
| Article 161. Composition, procedure and voting   | 65          |
| Article 162. Powers and functions  | 67          |
| Article 163. Organs of the Council   | 70          |
| Article 164. The Economic Planning Commission  | 71          |
| Article 165. The Legal and Technical Commission  | 71          |
| SUBSECTION D. THE SECRETARIAT  | 73          |
| Article 166. The Secretary-General   | 73          |
| Article 167. The staff of the Authority  | 73          |
| Article 168. International character and responsibilities of the Secretariat                     | 73          |
| Article 169. Consultation and co-operation with international and non-governmental organizations | 74          |
| SUBSECTION E. THE ENTERPRISE   | 74          |
| Article 170. The Enterprise  | 74          |
| SUBSECTION F. FINANCIAL ARRANGEMENTS OF THE AUTHORITY  | 74          |
| Article 171. Funds of the Authority  | 74          |
| Article 172. Annual budget of the Authority  | 75          |
| Article 173. Expenses of the Authority   | 75          |

|  | Page       |
|--|------------|
| Article 174. Borrowing powers of the Authority   | 75         |
| Article 175. Annual audit  | 76         |
| SUBSECTION G. LEGAL STATUS, PRIVILEGES AND IMMUNITIES  | 76         |
| Article 176. Legal status  | 76         |
| Article 177. Privileges and immunities   | 76         |
| Article 178. Immunity from legal process   | 76         |
| Article 179. Immunity from search and any form of seizure  | 76         |
| Article 180. Property and assets free from restrictions, regulations, controls and moratoria   | 76         |
| Article 181. Immunities of certain persons connected with the Authority  | 76         |
| Article 182. Inviolability of archives   | 77         |
| Article 183. Immunities from exemption   | 77         |
| SUBSECTION H. SUSPENSION OF RIGHTS OF MEMBERS  | 78         |
| Article 184. Suspension of voting rights   | <b>7</b> 3 |
| Article 185. Suspension of privileges and the rights of membership   | 78         |
| SECTION 6. SETTLEMENT OF DISPUTES AND ADVISORY OPINIONS  | 78         |
| Article 186. Establishment of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea  | 78         |
| Article 187. Jurisdiction of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber  | 78         |
| Article 188. Submission of disputes to a special chamber of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea or an ad hoc chamber of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber or to binding arbitration | 79         |
| Article 189. Advisory opinions   | 80         |
| Article 190. Limitation on jurisdiction with regard to decisions of the Authority  | 80         |
| Article 191. Participation and appearance of sponsoring States Parties   | 80         |

| CONTENTS (Continued)   | Page |
|--|------|
| PART XII. PROTECTION AND PRESERVATION OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT  | 81   |
| SECTION 1. GENERAL PROVISIONS  | 81   |
| Article 192. General obligation  | 81   |
| Article 193. Sovereign right of States to exploit their natural resources  | 81   |
| Article 194. Measures to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment                                   | 81   |
| Article 195. Duty not to transfer damage or hazards or transform one type of pollution into another                        | 82   |
| Article 196. Use of technologies or introduction of alien or new species   | 82   |
| SECTION 2. GLOBAL AND REGIONAL CO-OPERATION  | 82   |
| Article 197. Co-operation on a global or regional basis  | 82   |
| Article 198. Notification of imminent or actual damage   | 82   |
| Article 199. Contingency plans against pollution   | 83   |
| Article 200. Promotion of studies, research programmes and exchange of information and data                                | 83   |
| Article 201. Scientific criteria and regulations   | 83   |
| SECTION 3. TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE  | 83   |
| Article 202. Scientific and technical assistance to developing States  | 83   |
| Article 203. Preferential treatment for developing States  | 84   |
| SECTION 4. MONITORING AND ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT   | 84   |
| Article 204. Monitoring of the risks or effects of pollution   | 84   |
| Article 205. Publication of reports  | 84   |
| Article 206. Assessment of potential effects of activities   | 84   |
| SECTION 5. INTERNATIONAL RULES AND NATIONAL LEGISLATION TO PREVENT, REDUCE AND CONTROL POLLUTION OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT | 85   |
| Article 207. Pollution from land-based sources   | 85   |

|    |                              |   | <u>Page</u> |
|----|------------------------------|---|-------------|
|    | Article 208.                 | Pollution from sea-bed activities                                 | 85          |
|    | Article 209.                 | Pollution from activities in the Area                             | 86          |
|    | Article 210.                 | Dumping   | 86          |
|    | Article 211.                 | Pollution from vessels  | 86          |
|    | Article 212.                 | Pollution from or through the atmosphere                          | 88          |
| S. | ection 6. Enf                | ORCEMENT  | 89          |
|    |                              | Enforcement with respect to land-based sources of                 | 89          |
|    |                              | Enforcement with respect to pollution from sea-bed                | 89          |
|    |                              | Enforcement with respect to pollution from activities             | 89          |
|    | Article 216.                 | Enforcement with respect to dumping                               | 89          |
|    | Article 217.                 | Enforcement by flag States  | 90          |
|    | Article 218.                 | Enforcement by port States  | 91          |
|    | Article 219. avoid pollution | Measures relating to seaworthiness of vessels to                  | 91          |
|    | Article 220.                 | Enforcement by coastal States                                     | 91          |
|    | Article 221. pollution       | Measures relating to maritime casualties to avoid                 | 93          |
|    | Article 222. the atmosphere  | Enforcement with respect to pollution from or through             | 93          |
| S] | ECTION 7. SAF                | EGUARDS   | 94          |
|    | Article 223.                 | Measures to facilitate proceedings                                | 94          |
|    | Article 224.                 | Exercise of powers of enforcement                                 | 94          |
|    | Article 225. the powers of   | Duty to avoid adverse consequences in the exercise of enforcement | 94          |
|    | Article 226.                 | Investigation of foreign vessels                                  | 94          |
|    | Article 227.                 | Non-discrimination of foreign vessels                             | 95          |

|   | Page |
|---|------|
| Article 228. Suspension and restrictions on institution of proceedings  | 95   |
| Article 229. Institution of civil proceedings   | 95   |
| Article 230. Monetary penalties and the observance of recognized rights of the accused                        | 95   |
| Article 231. Notification to flag States and other States concerned   | 96   |
| Article 232. Liability of States arising from enforcement measures  | 96   |
| Article 233. Safeguards with respect to straits used for international navigation                             | 96   |
| SECTION 8. ICE-COVERED AREAS  | 96   |
| Article 234. Ice-covered areas  | 96   |
| SECTION 9. RESPONSIBILITY AND LIABILITY   | 97   |
| Article 235. Responsibility and liability   | 97   |
| SECTION 10. SOVEREIGN IMMUNITY  | 97   |
| Article 236. Sovereign immunity   | 97   |
| SECTION 11. OBLIGATIONS UNDER OTHER CONVENTIONS ON THE PROTECTION AND PRESERVATION OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT  | 97   |
| Article 237. Obligations under other conventions on the protection and preservation of the marine environment | 97   |
| PART XIII. MARINE SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH   | 98   |
| SECTION 1. GENERAL PROVISIONS   | 98   |
| Article 238. Right to conduct marine scientific research  | 98   |
| Article 239. Promotion of marine scientific research  | 98   |
| Article 240. General principles for the conduct of marine scientific research                                 | 98   |
| Article 241. Marine scientific research activities not constituting the legal basis for any claim             | 98   |

|                   |   | Page |
|-------------------|---|------|
| SECTION 2. GLOBAL | L AND REGIONAL CO-OPERATION   | 98   |
| Article 242. Pr   | romotion of international co-operation  | 98   |
| Article 243. Co   | reation of favourable conditions  | 99   |
|                   | ublication and dissemination of information and   | 99   |
| SECTION 3. CONDUC | CT AND PROMOTION OF MARINE SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH  | 99   |
| Article 245. Ma   | arine scientific research in the territorial sea  | 99   |
|                   | arine scientific research in the exclusive economic continental shelf                   | 99   |
|                   | arine scientific research projects undertaken by, or es of, international organizations | 101  |
| Article 248. Du   | uty to provide information to the coastal State   | 101  |
| Article 249. Du   | aty to comply with certain conditions   | 101  |
|                   | ommunications concerning marine scientific research                                     | 102  |
| Article 251. Ge   | eneral criteria and guidelines  | 102  |
| Article 252. In   | mplied consent  | 102  |
|                   | uspension or cessation of marine scientific research                                    | 103  |
|                   | ights of neighbouring land-locked and geographically ates                               | 104  |
|                   | easures to facilitate marine scientific research and vessels                            | 104  |
| Article 256. Ma   | arine scientific research in the Area   | 104  |
|                   | arine scientific research in the water column beyond the                                | 105  |
|                   | STATUS OF SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH INSTALLATIONS OR ARINE ENVIRONMENT                        | 105  |
| Article 258. De   | eployment and use   | 105  |

|        |                              |  | Page |
|--------|------------------------------|--|------|
|        | Article 259.                 | Legal status   | 105  |
|        | Article 260.                 | Safety zones   | 105  |
|        | Article 261.                 | Non-interference with shipping routes  | 105  |
|        | Article 262.                 | Identification markings and warning signals  | 105  |
| s      | SECTION 5. RE                | SPONSIBILITY AND LIABILITY   | 106  |
|        | Article 263.                 | Responsibility and liability   | 106  |
| S      | ECTION 6. SE                 | TTLEMENT OF DISPUTES AND INTERIM MEASURES  | 106  |
|        | Article 264.                 | Settlement of disputes   | 106  |
|        | Article 265.                 | Interim measures   | 106  |
| PART X | CIV. DEVELOPM                | ENT AND TRANSFER OF MARINE TECHNOLOGY  | 107  |
| s      | SECTION 1. GE                | NERAL PROVISIONS   | 107  |
|        | Article 266. technology      | Promotion of the development and transfer of marine  | 107  |
|        | Article 267.                 | Protection of legitimate interests   | 107  |
|        | Article 268.                 | Basic objectives   | 107  |
|        | Article 269.                 | Measures to achieve the basic objectives   | 108  |
| S      | SECTION 2. IN                | TERNATIONAL CO-OPERATION   | 108  |
|        | Article 270.                 | Ways and means of international co-operation   | 108  |
|        | Article 271.                 | Guidelines, criteria and standards   | 108  |
|        | Article 272.                 | Co-ordination of international programmes  | 103  |
|        | Article 273.<br>Authority in | Co-operation with international organizations and the the transfer of marine technology to developing States | 109  |
|        | Article 274. of marine tec   | Objectives of the Authority with respect to the transfer hnology   | 109  |

|      |                  |   | Page |
|------|------------------|---|------|
|      | SECTION 3. NATIO | ONAL AND REGIONAL MARINE SCIENTIFIC AND TRES                    | 100  |
|      |                  |   | 109  |
|      | Article 275. E   | stablishment of national centres                                | 109  |
|      | Article 276. E   | stablishment of regional centres                                | 110  |
|      | Article 277. F   | unctions of regional centres                                    | 110  |
|      | SECTION 4. CO-OP | TERATION AMONG INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS                      | 110  |
|      | Article 278. C   | o-operation among international organizations                   | 110  |
| PART | XV. SETTLEMENT O | F DISPUTES  | 111  |
|      | SECTION 1. GENER | AL PROVISIONS AND GENERAL OBLIGATIONS                           | 111  |
|      | Article 279. 0   | bligation to settle disputes by peaceful means                  | 111  |
|      |                  | ettlement of disputes by means chosen by the                    | 111  |
|      | Article 281. O   | bligation to exchange views                                     | 111  |
|      |                  | bligations under general, regional or special other instruments | 111  |
|      |                  | Procedure when dispute is not settled by means parties          | 111  |
|      | Article 284. C   | Conciliation  | 112  |
|      |                  | application of this section to disputes submitted to XI         | 112  |
|      | SECTION 2. COMPU | ULSORY PROCEDURES ENTAILING BINDING DECISIONS                   | 112  |
|      |                  | application of section 1 and proceedings under                  | 112  |
|      | Article 287. C   | Choice of procedure   | 112  |
|      | Article 288. C   | Competence  | 113  |
|      | Article 289. E   | Expert advice and assistance                                    | 113  |
|      | Article 290. I   | Provisional measures  | 114  |

|                           |   | Page |
|---------------------------|---|------|
| Article 291.              | Access  | 114  |
| Article 292.              | Prompt release of vessels                               | 114  |
| Article 293.              | Applicable law  | 115  |
| Article 294.              | Preliminary proceedings                                 | 115  |
| Article 295.              | Exhaustion of local remedies                            | 115  |
| Article 296.              | Finality and binding force of decisions                 | 115  |
|                           | ITATIONS AND EXCEPTIONS TO APPLICABILITY OF             | 116  |
| Article 297.              | Limitations on applicability of section 2               | 116  |
| Article 293.              | Optional Exceptions                                     | 117  |
| Article 299.              | Right of the parties to agree upon procedure            | 118  |
| PART XVI. GENERAL P       | ROVISIONS   | 119  |
| Article 300.              | Good faith and abuse of rights                          | 119  |
| Article 301.              | Peaceful uses of the seas                               | 119  |
| Article 302.              | Disclosure of information                               | 119  |
| Article 303. origin found | Archaeological objects and objects of historical at sea | 119  |
| Article 304.              | Responsibility and liability for damage                 | 120  |
| PART XVII. FINAL CL       | AUSES   | 121  |
| Article 305.              | Signature   | 121  |
| Article 306.              | Ratification  | 121  |
| Article 307.              | Accession   | 121  |
| Article 308.              | Entry into force  | 121  |
| Article 309.              | Reservations and exceptions                             | 122  |
| Article 310.              | Declarations and statements                             | 122  |
| Article 311. agreements   | Relation to other conventions and international         | 122  |
| Article 312.              | Amendment   | 123  |
| Article 313.              | Amendment by simplified procedure                       | 123  |

|       |  | Page         |
|-------|--|--------------|
|       | Article 314. Amendments to the provisions of the Convention relating exclusively to activities in the Area | 123          |
|       | Article 315. Signature, ratification of, accession to and authentic texts of amendments                    | 124          |
|       | Article 316. Entry into force of amendments  | 124          |
|       | Article 317. Denunciation  | 124          |
|       | Article 318. Status of annexes   | 125          |
|       | Article 319. Depositary  | 125          |
|       | Article 320. Authentic texts   | 125          |
|       | Transitional provision   | 126          |
|       | ANNEXES  |              |
| I.    | Highly migratory species   | 127          |
| II.   | Commission on the Limits of the Continental Shelf  | 128          |
| III.  | Basic conditions of prospecting, exploration and exploitation  | 1 <b>3</b> 0 |
| IV.   | Statute of the Enterprise  | 152          |
| v.    | Conciliation   | 161          |
| VI.   | Statute of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea   | 165          |
| VII.  | Arbitration  | 176          |
| VIII. | Special arbitration procedure  | 179          |

#### DOCUMENT A/CONF.62/WP.10/REV.3/ADD.1

#### Explanatory Memorandum by the President of the Conference

 $\frac{\sqrt{0}\text{riginal: English}}{\sqrt{28} \text{ August } 1980}$ 

- 1. The first revision of the ICNT was effected in accordance with the decision taken by the Conference at its 90th meeting and recorded in paragraphs 10 and 11 of document A/CONF.62/62 dated 30 April 1978. 1/
- 2. The decision of the Conference regarding the procedure to be followed in the revision and which is recorded in paragraph 10 of document A/CONF.62/62 directed that any modification or revision to be made in the Informal Composite Negotiating Text should emerge from the negotiations themselves and should not be introduced on the initiative of any single person, whether it be the President or a Chairman of a Committee, unless presented to the plenary and found, from the widespread and substantial support prevailing in plenary, to offer a substantially improved prospect of a consensus. The revision was to be the collective responsibility of the President and the Chairman of the Main Committees, acting together as a team headed by the President and with which the Chairman of the Drafting Committee and the Rapporteur-General were to be associated as the former had to be fully aware of the considerations that determined any revision and the latter should, ex officio, be kept informed of the manner in which the Conference has proceeded at all stages. (The "team" will, hereinafter, be referred to as the "collegium".)
- 3. With regard to the interpretation to be given to the provisions of paragraph 10 of A/CONF.62/62 regarding the revision, the collegium had to assume the responsibility of determining what criteria to apply in deciding whether a given text emerging from the negotiations enjoyed widespread and substantial support in plenary and, therefore, offered a substantially improved prospect of consensus.

<sup>1/</sup> Official Records of the Third United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea, volume X. (United Nations Sales No. E.79.V.4).

- 4. At the first part of the ninth session, the Conference was able to carry out negotiations to the stage where by 3 April 1980 after the formal debate in Plenary, the Collegium considered the reports presented to the Plenary and the results of the negotiations on the Preamble. Having taken note of the debate in Plenary, the Collegium effected the second revision of the ICNT which is found in document A/CONF.62/WP.10/Rev.2 dated 11 April 1980.
- 5. During the resumed ninth session, which commenced on 28 July 1980, the negotiations on the outstanding issues in the three Main Committees and in the Informal Plenary, acting as a Main Committee for the purpose, were concluded on Saturday, 23 August 1980. The results of those negotiations were discussed during the general debate on 25, 26 and 27 August 1980. Following the general debate, the Collegium took note of the results of the negotiations during the resumed session and the statements made in the course of the general debate. The conclusions reached by the Collegium are reflected in the revision of the ICNT/Rev.2 which has now been effected.
- 6. The results recorded in the Report of the Co-ordinators of the Working Group of 21 as accepted by the First Committee (A/CONF.62/C.1/L.28 and Corr.1-2, and Add.1 and Corr.1) including the corrigendum relating to article 162.2 (j); the results of the negotiations conducted by the Third Committee (A/CONF.62/L.61); the results of the negotiations in the Informal Plenary (A/CONF.62/L.58 on General Provisions; L.59 and Corr.1 on Settlement of Disputes; and L.60 and Corr.1 on Final Clauses) were approved by the Collegium for incorporation in the revision as satisfying the requirements of document  $\Lambda/CONF.62/62$ .
- 7. The Collegium also decided that having regard to the inappropriateness of referring to the revised text as a final negotiating text, since there were some outstanding issues that needed further negotiations, it seemed more appropriate and advisable to give the revised text the title "Draft Convention (Informal Text)". This text like its predecessor will be informal in character. It is a negotiating text and not a negotiated text, and does not prejudice the position of any delegation.
- 8. In the Explanatory Memorandum on Revision 1 of the Informal Composite Negotiating Text (A/CONF.62/WP.10/Rev.1) it was recalled that the President had reiterated that "the very nature of the concept of a package deal required that no delegation's position on a particular issue should be treated as irrevocable until at least all the elements of the package had formed the subject of agreement and that, therefore, every delegation had the right to reserve its position on any particular issue until it had received satisfaction on other issues which it considered to be of vital importance to it".
- 9. To avoid any misunderstanding as to the status of the second revision which is now presented, the President would wish to emphasize that it must be regarded as a negotiating text which provides, in the best judgement of the collegium, a better basis of negotiation and one that offers a substantially improved prospect of a consensus.

The same observations apply with equal force to the revision now effected.

Alternative titles for this new revision were considered but the Collegium decided unanimously to adopt the title "Draft Convention (Informal Text)". The title does not prejudge the status of the text which has to be determined at the tenth session.

It should be noted further that as regards the question of the Seat of the Authority an understanding has been reached among the three candidates - Jamaica, Malta and Fiji - that the foot-note appended to article 156.3 of document A/CONF.62/WP.10/Rev.2 will remain unchanged and that the matter be fully considered at the tenth session.

- 10. With regard to the Final Clauses, foot-notes have been appended to the text to reflect the understanding on which those provisions have been incorporated.
- ll. A new Part XVI has been added which incorporates those General Provisions that were found acceptable, viz. article 300 on Good faith and abuse of rights; article 301 on Peaceful uses of the seas and article 302 on Disclosure of information. They have been incorporated in the text on the basis of the understandings referred to in the report of the President in document  $\Lambda/\text{CONF.62/L.53}$ .

Article 303 on Archeological objects and objects of historic origin found at sea; and article 304 on Responsibility and liability for damage have also been incorporated as accepted by the Plenary on the understandings and clarifications recorded in document A/CONF.62/L.58. The other item dealt with under General Provisions was the concept of jus cogens on which a compromise formulation was accepted as referred to in A/CONF.62/L.58. It was agreed that it be incorporated as a new paragraph 6 of article 311 of the Final clauses on relation to other conventions and international agreements.

- 12. There was yet another unresolved issue, viz. that of the delimitation of maritime zones as between States with adjacent or opposite coasts and the settlement of disputes thereon. In regard to this issue the provisions in A/CONF.62/Rev.2 raised strong objections from one of the two groups chiefly concerned. Negotiations between representatives of these two groups were continued during the resumed ninth session but a satisfactory solution has not yet been found. Further time must, therefore, be given for the two groups mainly interested to pursue their efforts in order to arrive at a mutually acceptable text which would serve as a compromise.
- 13. In the general debate reference was made to the need for further negotiations on certain issues which were regarded as not yet finally resolved to the satisfaction of the interested parties. It is not practicable to give an exhaustive list of these issues. Delegations most interested are urged to conduct consultations and negotiations to secure a speedy resolution of these problems which would not disrupt the package. Any consensus emerging from negotiations could then be presented to the appropriate organ of the Conference for incorporation in the text.
- 14. The President expresses the hope that this revision will be regarded as bringing the Conference to the final stage of its deliberations and negotiations.

In a convention of such amplitude as the convention now being negotiated, the attainment of agreement on all the issues involved in a manner which in every respect would satisfy all participants and reconcile such a bewildering diversity of interests may well be an unattainable ideal. The only feasible compromise is to accept something that falls short of the perfect in order to achieve the desirable.

#### The States Parties to this Convention,

<u>Prompted</u> by the desire to settle, in a spirit of mutual understanding and co-operation, all issues relating to the law of the sea and aware of the historic significance of this Convention as an important contribution to the maintenance of peace, justice and progress for all the peoples of the world,

Noting that the developments that have occurred since the United Nations Conferences on the Law of the Sea held at Geneva in 1958 and 1960 have accentuated the need for a new and generally acceptable Convention on the law of the sea,

Conscious that the problems of ocean space are closely interrelated and need to be considered as a whole.

Recognizing the desirability of establishing, through this Convention, and with due regard for the sovereignty of all States, a legal order for the seas and oceans which would facilitate international communication and promote their peaceful uses, the equitable and efficient utilization of their resources, the study, protection and preservation of the marine environment and the conservation of the living resources thereof,

Bearing in mind that the achievement of such goals will contribute to the realization of a just and equitable international economic order which would take into account the interests and needs of mankind as a whole and, in particular, the special interests and needs of developing countries, whether coastal or land-locked,

Desiring by this Convention to develop the principles embodied in resolution 2749 (XXV) of 17 December 1970 in which the General Assembly solemnly declared inter alia that the area of the sea-bed and ocean floor and the subsoil thereof, beyond the limits of national jurisdiction, as well as its resources, is the common heritage of mankind, the exploration and exploitation of which shall be carried out for the benefit of mankind as a whole, irrespective of the geographical location of States,

Believing that the codification and progressive development of the law of the sea achieved in the present Convention will contribute to the strengthening of peace, security, co-operation and friendly relations among all nations in conformity with the principles of justice and equal rights and promote the economic and social advancement of all peoples of the world, in accordance with the Purposes and Principles of the United Nations as set forth in its Charter,

Affirming that matters not regulated by this Convention continue to be governed by the rules and principles of general international law,

Have agreed as follows:

#### PART I. USE OF TERMS

## Article 1 Use of terms

For the purposes of this Convention:

- 1. "Area" means the sea-bed and ocean floor and subsoil thereof beyond the limits of national jurisdiction;
  - 2. "Authority" means the International Sea-Bed Authority;
- 3. "Activities in the Area" neans all activities of exploration for, and emploitation of, the resources of the Area;
- A. "Pollution of the marine environment" means the introduction by man, directly or indirectly, of substances or energy into the marine environment (including estuaries) which results or is likely to result in such deleterious effects as harm to living resources and marine life, hazards to human health, hindrance to marine activities, including fishing and other legitimate uses of the sea, impairment of quality for use of sea water and reduction of amenities;
  - 5. (a) "Dumping" means:
    - (i) any deliberate disposal of wastes or other matter from vessels, aircraft, platforms or other man-made structures at sea;
    - (ii) any deliberate disposal of vessels, aircraft, platforms or other man-made structures at sea.
    - (b) "Dumping" does not include:
    - (i) the disposal of wastes or other matter incidental to, or derived from the normal operations of vessels, aircraft, platforms or other man-made structures at sea and their equipment, other than wastes or other matter transported by or to vessels, aircraft, platforms or other man-made structures at sea, operating for the purpose of disposal of such matter or derived from the treatment of such wastes or other matter on such vessels, aircraft, platforms or structures;
    - (ii) placement of matter for a purpose other than the mere disposal thereof, provided that such placement is not contrary to the aims of this Convention.

#### PART II. TERRITORIAL SEA AND CONTIGUOUS ZONE

#### SECTION 1. GENERAL

# Lecal status of the territorial sea, of the air space over the territorial sea and of its bed and subsoil

- 1. The sovereignty of a coastal State extends beyond its land territory and internal waters, and in the case of an archipelagic State, its archipelagic waters, over an adjacent belt of sea described as the territorial sea.
- 2. This sovereignty extends to the air space over the territorial sea as well as to its bed and subsoil.
- 3. The sovereignty over the territorial sea is exercised subject to this Convention and to other rules of international law.

#### SECTION 2. LIMITS OF THE TERRITORIAL SEA

## Article 3 Breadth of the territorial sea

Every State has the right to establish the breadth of its territorial sea up to a limit not exceeding 12 nautical miles, measured from baselines determined in accordance with this Convention.

# Article 4 Outer limit of the territorial sca

The outer limit of the territorial sea is the line every point of which is at a distance from the nearest point of the baseline equal to the breadth of the territorial sea.

#### Article 5 Normal baseline

Except where otherwise provided in this Convention, the normal baseline for measuring the breadth of the territorial sea is the low-water line along the coast as marked on large-scale charts officially recognized by the coastal State.

# Article 6 Reefs

In the case of islands situated on atolls or of islands having fringing reefs, the baseline for measuring the breadth of the territorial sea is the seaward low-water line of the reef, as shown by the appropriate symbol on official charts.

#### Article 7 Straight baselines

1. In localities where the coastline is deeply indented and cut into, or if there is a fringe of islands along the coast in its immediate vicinity, the method of straight baselines joining appropriate points may be employed in drawing the baseline from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured.

- 2. Where because of the presence of a delta and other natural conditions the coastline is highly unstable, the appropriate points may be selected along the furthest seaward extent of the low-water line and, notwithstanding subsequent regression of the low-water line, such baselines shall remain effective until changed by the coastal State in accordance with this Convention.
- 3. The drawing of such baselines must not depart to any appreciable extent from the general direction of the coast, and the sea areas lying within the lines must be sufficiently closely linked to the land domain to be subject to the régime of internal waters.
- 4. Straight baselines shall not be drawn to and from low-tide elevations, unless lighthouses or similar installations which are permanently above sea level have been built on them or except in instances where the drawing of baselines to and from such elevations has received general international recognition.
- 5. Where the method of straight baselines is applicable under paragraph 1 account may be taken, in determining particular baselines, of economic interests peculiar to the region concerned, the reality and the importance of which are clearly evidenced by a long usage.
- 6. The system of straight baselines may not be applied by a State in such a manner as to cut off from the high seas or the exclusive economic zone the territorial sea of another State.

## Article 8 Internal waters

- 1. Except as provided in Part IV, waters on the landward side of the baseline of the territorial sea form part of the internal waters of the State.
- 2. Where the establishment of a straight baseline in accordance with article 7 has the effect of enclosing as internal waters areas which had not previously been considered as such, a right of innocent passage as provided in this Convention shall exist in those waters.

## Article 9 Mouths of rivers

If a river flows directly into the sea, the baseline shall be a straight line across the mouth of the river between points on the low-tide line of its banks.

#### Article 10 Bays

- 1. This article relates only to bays the coasts of which belong to a single State.
- 2. For the purposes of this Convention, a bay is a well-marked indentation whose penetration is in such proportion to the width of its mouth as to contain land-locked waters and constitute more than a mere curvature of the coast. An indentation shall not, however, be regarded as a bay unless its area is as large as, or larger than, that of the semi-circle whose diameter is a line drawn across the mouth of that indentation.

- 3. For the purposes of measurement, the area of an indentation is that lying between the low-water mark around the shore of the indentation and a line joining the low-water mark of its natural entrance points. Where, because of the presence of islands, an indentation has more than one mouth, the semi-circle shall be drawn on a line as long as the sum total of the lengths of the lines across the different mouths. Islands within an indentation shall be included as if they were part of the water area of the indentation.
- 4. If the distance between the low-water marks of the natural entrance points of a bay does not exceed 24 nautical miles a closing line may be drawn between these two low-water marks, and the waters enclosed thereby shall be considered as internal waters.
- 5. Where the distance between the low-water marks of the natural entrance points of a bay exceeds 24 nautical miles a straight baseline of 24 nautical miles shall be drawn within the bay in such a manner as to enclose the maximum area of water that is possible with a line of that length.
- 6. The foregoing provisions do not apply to so-called "historic" bays, or in any case where the system of straight baselines provided for in article 7 is applied.

# Article 11 Ports

For the purpose of delimiting the territorial sea, the outermost permanent harbour works which form an integral part of the harbour system are regarded as forming part of the coast. Off-shore installations and artificial islands shall not be considered as permanent harbour works.

#### Article 12 Roadsteads

Roadsteads which are normally used for the loading, unloading, and anchoring of ships, and which would otherwise be situated wholly or partly outside the outer limit of the territorial sea, are included in the territorial sea.

## Article 13 Low-tide elevations

- 1. A low-tide elevation is a naturally formed area of land which is surrounded by and above water at low tide but submerged at high tide. Where a low-tide elevation is situated wholly or partly at a distance not exceeding the breadth of the territorial sea from the mainland or an island, the low-water line on that elevation may be used as the baseline for measuring the breadth of the territorial sea.
- 2. Where a low-tide elevation is wholly situated at a distance exceeding the breadth of the territorial sea from the mainland or an island, it has no territorial sea of its own.

### Article 14 Combination of methods for determining baselines

The coastal State may determine baselines in turn by any of the methods provided for in the foregoing articles to suit different conditions.

# Delimitation of the territorial sea between States with opposite or adjacent coasts

Where the coasts of two States are opposite or adjacent to each other, neither of the two States is entitled, failing agreement between them to the contrary, to extend its territorial sea beyond the median line every point of which is equidistant from the nearest points on the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial seas of each of the two States is measured. The above provision does not apply, however, where it is necessary by reason of historic title or other special circumstances to delimit the territorial seas of the two States in a way which is at variance therewith.

# <u>Article 16</u> Charts and lists of geographical co-ordinates

- 1. The baselines for measuring the breadth of the territorial sea determined in accordance with articles 7, 9 and 10, or the limits derived therefrom, and the lines of delimitation drawn in accordance with articles 12 and 15, shall be shown on charts of a scale or scales adequate for determining them. Alternatively, a list of geographical co-ordinates of points, specifying the geodetic datum, may be substituted.
- 2. The coastal State shall give due publicity to such charts or lists of geographical co-ordinates and shall deposit a copy of each such chart or list with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

#### SECTION 3. INNOCENT PASSAGE IN THE TERRITORIAL SEA

#### SUBSECTION A. RULES APPLICABLE TO ALL SHIPS

## Article 17 Right of innocent passage

Subject to this Convention, ships of all States, whether coastal or land-locked, enjoy the right of innocent passage through the territorial sea.

#### Article 18 Meaning of passage

- 1. Passage means navigation through the territorial sea for the purpose of:
- (a) Traversing that sea without entering internal waters or calling at a roadstead or port facility outside internal waters; or
- (b) Proceeding to or from internal waters or a call at such roadstead or port facility.
- 2. Passage shall be continuous and expeditious. However, passage includes stopping and anchoring, but only in so far as the same are incidental to ordinary navigation or are rendered necessary by force majeure or distress or for the purpose of rendering assistance to persons, ships or aircraft in danger or distress.

#### Article 19 Meaning of innocent passage

- l. Passage is innocent so long as it is not prejudicial to the peace, good order or security of the coastal State. Such passage shall take place in conformity with this Convention and with other rules of international law.
- 2. Passage of a foreign ship shall be considered to be prejudicial to the peace, good order or security of the coastal State, if in the territorial sea it engages in any of the following activities:
- (a) Any threat or use of force against the sovereignty, territorial integrity or political independence of the coastal State, or in any other manner in violation of the principles of international law embodied in the Charter of the United Nations;
  - (b) Any exercise or practice with weapons of any kind;
- (c) Any act aimed at collecting information to the prejudice of the defence or security of the coastal State;
- (d) Any act of propaganda aimed at affecting the defence or security of the coastal State;
  - (e) The launching, landing or taking on board of any aircraft;
  - (f) The launching, landing or taking on board of any military device;
- (g) The embarking or disembarking of any commodity, currency or person contrary to the customs, fiscal, immigration or sanitary regulations of the coastal State;

- (h) Any act of wilful and serious pollution, contrary to this Convention;
- (i) Any fishing activities;
- (j) The carrying out of research or survey activities;
- (k) Any act aimed at interfering with any systems of communication or any other facilities or installations of the coastal State;
  - (1) Any other activity not having a direct bearing on passage.

## Article 20 Submarines and other underwater vehicles

In the territorial sea, submarines and other underwater vehicles are required to navigate on the surface and to show their flag.

# Laws and regulations of the coastal State relating to innocent passage

- 1. The coastal State may adopt laws and regulations, in conformity with the provisions of this Convention and other rules of international law, relating to innocent passage through the territorial sea, in respect of all or any of the following:
  - (a) The safety of navigation and the regulation of marine traffic;
- (b) The protection of navigational aids and facilities and other facilities or installations;
  - (c) The protection of cables and pipelines;
  - (d) The conservation of the living resources of the sea;
- (e) The prevention of infringement of the fisheries regulations of the coastal State;
- (f) The preservation of the environment of the coastal State and the prevention, reduction and control of pollution thereof;
  - (g) Marine scientific research and hydrographic surveys;
- (h) The prevention of infringement of the customs, fiscal, immigration or sanitary regulations of the coastal State.
- 2. Such laws and regulations shall not apply to the design, construction, manning or equipment of foreign ships unless they are giving effect to generally accepted international rules or standards.
- 3. The coastal State shall give due publicity to all such laws and regulations.
- 4. Foreign ships exercising the right of innocent passage through the territorial sea shall comply with all such laws and regulations and all generally accepted international regulations relating to the prevention of collisions at sea.

# Article 22 Sea lanes and traffic separation schemes in the territorial sea

- 1. The coastal State may, where necessary having regard to the safety of navigation, require foreign ships exercising the right of innocent passage through its territorial sea to use such sea lanes and traffic separation schemes as it may designate or prescribe for the regulation of the passage of ships.
- 2. In particular, tankers, nuclear-powered ships and ships carrying nuclear or other inherently dangerous or noxious substances or materials may be required to confine their passage to such sea lanes.
- 3. In the designation of sea lanes and the prescription of traffic separation schemes under this article the coastal State shall take into account:
  - (a) The recommendations of the competent international organization;
  - (b) Any channels customarily used for international navigation;
  - (c) The special characteristics of particular ships and channels; and
  - (d) The density of traffic.
- 4. The coastal State shall clearly indicate such sea lanes and traffic separation schemes on charts to which due publicity shall be given.

# Article 23 Foreign nuclear-powered ships and ships carrying nuclear or other inherently dangerous or noxious substances

Foreign nuclear-powered ships and ships carrying nuclear or other inherently dangerous or noxious substances shall, when exercising the right of innocent passage through the territorial sea, carry documents and observe special precautionary measures established for such ships by international agreements.

# Article 24 Duties of the coastal State

- 1. The coastal State shall not hamper the innocent passage of foreign ships through the territorial sea except in accordance with this Convention. In particular, in the application of this Convention or of any laws or regulations adopted under this Convention, the coastal State shall not:
- (a) Impose requirements on foreign ships which have the practical effect of denying or impairing the right of innocent passage; or
- (b) Discriminate in form or in fact against the ships of any State or against ships carrying cargoes to, from or on behalf of any State.
- 2. The coastal State shall give appropriate publicity to any dangers to navigation, of which it has knowledge, within its territorial sea.

## Article 25 Rights of protection of the coastal State

- 1. The coastal State may take the necessary steps in its territorial sea to prevent passage which is not innocent.
- 2. In the case of ships proceeding to internal waters or a call at a port facility outside internal waters, the coastal State also has the right to take the necessary steps to prevent any breach of the conditions to which admission of those ships to internal waters or such a call is subject.
- 3. The coastal State may, without discrimination amongst foreign ships, suspend temporarily in specified areas of its territorial sea the innocent passage of foreign ships if such suspension is essential for the protection of its security, including weapons exercises. Such suspension shall take effect only after having been duly published.

# Article 26 Charges which may be levied upon foreign ships

- 1. No charge may be levied upon foreign ships by reason only of their passage through the territorial sea.
- 2. Charges may be levied upon a foreign ship passing through the territorial sea as payment only for specific services rendered to the ship. These charges shall be levied without discrimination.

# SUBSECTION B. RULES APPLICABLE TO HERCHANT SHIPS AND GOVERNMENT SHIPS OPERATED FOR COMMERCIAL PURPOSES

#### Article 27 Criminal jurisdiction on board a foreign ship

- 1. The criminal jurisdiction of the coastal State should not be exercised on board a foreign ship passing through the territorial sea to arrest any person or to conduct any investigation in connexion with any crime committed on board the ship during its passage, save only in the following cases:
  - (a) If the consequences of the crime extend to the coastal State;
- (b) If the crime is of a kind to disturb the peace of the country or the good order of the territorial sea;
- (c) If the assistance of the local authorities has been requested by the captain of the ship or by a diplomatic agent or consular officer of the flag State; or
- (d) If such measures are necessary for the suppression of illicit traffic in narcotic drugs or psychotropic substances.
- 2. The above provisions do not affect the right of the coastal State to take any steps authorized by its laws for the purpose of an arrest or investigation on board a foreign ship passing through the territorial sea after leaving internal waters.

- 3. In the cases provided for in paragraphs 1 and 2, the coastal State shall, if the captain so requests, notify a diplomatic agent or consular officer of the flag State before taking any steps, and shall facilitate contact between such agent or officer and the ship's crew. In cases of emergency this notification may be communicated while the measures are being taken.
- 4. In considering whether or in what manner an arrest should be made, the local authorities shall pay due regard to the interests of navigation.
- 5. Except as provided in Part XII or with respect to violations of laws and regulations adopted in accordance with Part V, the coastal State may not take any steps on board a foreign ship passing through the territorial sea to arrest any person or to conduct any investigation in connexion with any crime committed before the ship entered the territorial sea, if the ship, proceeding from a foreign port, is only passing through the territorial sea without entering internal waters.

## Article 20 Civil jurisdiction in relation to foreign ships

- 1. The coastal State should not stop or divert a foreign ship passing through the territorial sea for the purpose of exercising civil jurisdiction in relation to a person on board the ship.
- 2. The coastal State may not levy execution against or arrest the ship for the purpose of any civil proceedings, save only in respect of obligations or liabilities assumed or incurred by the ship itself in the course or for the purpose of its voyage through the waters of the coastal State.
- 3. Paragraph 2 is without prejudice to the right of the coastal State, in accordance with its laws, to levy execution against or to arrest, for the purpose of any civil proceedings, a foreign ship lying in the territorial sea or passing through the territorial sea after leaving internal waters.

SUBSECTION C. RULES APPLICABLE TO WARSHIPS AND OTHER GOVERNMENT SHIPS OPERATED FOR NON-COMMERCIAL PURPOSES

## Article 29 Definition of warships

For the purposes of this Convention, "warship" means a ship belonging to the armed forces of a State bearing the external marks distinguishing such ships of its nationality, under the command of an officer duly commissioned by the Government of the State and whose name appears in the appropriate service list or its equivalent, and manned by a crew which is under regular armed forces discipline.

# Non-observance by warships of the laws and regulations of the coastal State

If any warship does not comply with the laws and regulations of the coastal State concerning passage through the territorial sea and disregards any request for compliance which is made to it, the coastal State may require it to leave the territorial sea immediately.

# Article 31 Responsibility of the flag State for damage caused by a warship or other government ship operated for non-commercial purposes

The flag State shall bear international responsibility for any loss or damage to the coastal State resulting from the non-compliance by a warship or other government ship operated for non-commercial purposes with the laws and regulations of the coastal State concerning passage through the territorial sea or with the provisions of this Convention or other rules of international law.

# Article 32 Immunities of warships and other government ships operated for non-commercial purposes

With such exceptions as are contained in subsection A and in articles 30 and 31, nothing in this Convention affects the immunities of warships and other government ships operated for non-commercial purposes.

#### SECTION 4. CONTIGUOUS ZONE

#### Article 33 Contiguous zone

- 1. In a zone contiguous to its territorial sea, described as the contiguous zone, the coastal State may exercise the control necessary to:
- (a) Prevent infringement of its customs, fiscal, immigration or sanitary regulations within its territory or territorial sea;
- (b) Punish infringement of the above regulations committed within its territory or territorial sea.
- 2. The contiguous zone may not extend beyond 24 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured.

#### PART III. STRAITS USED FOR INTERNATIONAL NAVIGATION

#### SECTION 1. GENERAL

# Article 34 Legal status of waters forming straits used for international navigation

- 1. The régime of passage through straits used for international navigation established in this Part shall not in other respects affect the status of the waters forming such straits or the exercise by the States bordering the straits of their sovereignty or jurisdiction over such waters and their air space, bed and subsoil.
- 2. The sovereignty or jurisdiction of the States bordering the straits is exercised subject to this Part and to other rules of international law.

#### Article 35 Scope of this Part

Nothing in this Part shall affect:

- (a) Any areas of internal waters within a strait, except where the establishment of a straight baseline in accordance with article 7 has the effect of enclosing as internal waters areas which had not previously been considered as such;
- (b) The status of the waters beyond the territorial seas of States bordering straits as exclusive economic zones or high seas; or
- (c) The legal régime in straits in which passage is regulated in whole or in part by long-standing international conventions in force specifically relating to such straits.

# Article 36 High seas routes or routes through exclusive economic zones through straits used for international navigation

This Part does not apply to a strait used for international navigation if a high seas route or a route through an exclusive economic zone of similar convenience with respect to navigational and hydrographical characteristics exists through the strait.

#### SECTION 2. TRANSIT PASSAGE

## Article 37 Scope of this section

This section applies to straits which are used for international navigation between one area of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone and another area of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone.

## Article 38 Right of transit passage

- 1. In straits referred to in article 37, all ships and aircraft enjoy the right of transit passage, which shall not be impeded, except that, if the strait is formed by an island of a State bordering the strait and its mainland, transit passage shall not apply if a high seas route or a route in an exclusive economic zone of similar convenience with respect to navigational and hydrographical characteristics exists seaward of the island.
- 2. Transit passage is the exercise in accordance with this Part of the freedom of navigation and overflight solely for the purpose of continuous and expeditious transit of the strait between one area of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone and another area of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone. However, the requirement of continuous and expeditious transit does not preclude passage through the strait for the purpose of entering, leaving or returning from a State bordering the strait, subject to the conditions of entry to that State.
- 3. Any activity which is not an exercise of the right of transit passage through a strait remains subject to the other applicable provisions of this Convention.

## Article 39 Duties of ships and aircraft during their passage

- 1. Ships and aircraft, while exercising the right of transit passage, shall:
- (a) Proceed without delay through or over the strait;
- (b) Refrain from any threat or use of force against the sovereignty, territorial integrity or political independence of States bordering straits, or in any other manner in violation of the principles of international law embodied in the Charter of the United Nations;
- (c) Refrain from any activities other than those incident to their normal modes of continuous and expeditious transit unless rendered necessary by <u>force majeure</u> or by distress;
  - (d) Comply with other relevant provisions of this Part.
  - 2. Ships in transit shall:
- (a) Comply with generally accepted international regulations, procedures and practices for safety at sea, including the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea;
- (b) Comply with generally accepted international regulations, procedures and practices for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from ships.

#### 3. Aircraft in transit shall:

- (a) Observe the Rules of the Air established by the International Civil Aviation Organization as they apply to civil aircraft; State aircraft will normally comply with such safety measures and will at all times operate with due regard for the safety of navigation;
- (b) At all times monitor the radio frequency assigned by the appropriate internationally designated air traffic control authority or the appropriate international distress radio frequency.

### Article 40 Research and survey activities

During their passage through straits, foreign ships, including marine scientific research and hydrographic survey ships, may not carry out any research or survey activities without the prior authorization of the States bordering straits.

## Article 41 Sea lanes and traffic separation schemes in straits used for international navigation

- 1. In conformity with this Part, States bordering straits may designate sea lanes and prescribe traffic separation schemes for navigation in straits where necessary to promote the safe passage of ships.
- 2. Such States may, when circumstances require, and after giving due publicity thereto, substitute other sea lanes or traffic separation schemes for any sea lanes or traffic separation schemes previously designated or prescribed by them.
- 3. Such sea lanes and traffic separation schemes shall conform to generally accepted international regulations.
- 4. Before designating or substituting sea lanes or prescribing or substituting traffic separation schemes, States bordering straits shall refer proposals to the competent international organization with a view to their adoption. The organization may adopt only such sea lanes and traffic separation schemes as may be agreed with the States bordering the straits, after which the States may designate, prescribe or substitute them.
- 5. In respect of a strait where sea lanes or traffic separation schemes are proposed through the waters of two or more States bordering the strait, the States concerned shall co-operate in formulating proposals in consultation with the organization.
- 6. States bordering straits shall clearly indicate all sea lanes and traffic separation schemes designated or prescribed by them on charts to which due publicity shall be given.
- 7. Ships in transit shall respect applicable sea lanes and traffic separation schemes established in accordance with this article.

## <u>Article 42</u> <u>Laws and regulations of States bordering</u> straits relating to transit passage

- 1. Subject to the provisions of this section, States bordering straits may adopt laws and regulations relating to transit passage through straits, in respect of all or any of the following:
- (a) The safety of navigation and the regulation of marine traffic, as provided in article 41;
- (b) The prevention, reduction and control of pollution, by giving effect to applicable international regulations regarding the discharge of oil, oily wastes and other noxious substances in the strait;
- (c) With respect to fishing vessels, the prevention of fishing, including the stowage of fishing gear;
- (d) The taking on board or putting overboard of any commodity, currency or person in contravention of the customs, fiscal, immigration or sanitary regulations of States bordering straits.
- 2. Such laws and regulations shall not discriminate in form or in fact amongst foreign ships or in their application have the practical effect of denying, hampering or impairing the right of transit passage as defined in this section.
- 3. States bordering straits shall give due publicity to all such laws and regulations.
- 4. Foreign ships exercising the right of transit passage shall comply with such laws and regulations.
- 5. The flag State of a ship or aircraft entitled to sovereign immunity which acts in a manner contrary to such laws and regulations or other provisions of this Part shall bear international responsibility for any loss or damage which results to States bordering straits.

## Navigation and safety aids and other improvements and the prevention, reduction and control of pollution

User States and States bordering a strait should by agreement co-operate:

- (a) In the establishment and maintenance in a strait of necessary navigation and safety aids or other improvements in aid of international navigation; and
  - (b) For the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from ships.

### Article 44 Duties of States bordering straits

States bordering straits shall not hamper transit passage and shall give appropriate publicity to any danger to navigation or overflight within or over the strait of which they have knowledge. There shall be no suspension of transit passage.

#### SECTION 3. INNOCENT PASSAGE

#### Article 45 Innocent passage

- 1. The régime of innocent passage, in accordance with section 3 of Part II, shall apply in straits used for international navigation:
- (a) Excluded under article 38, paragraph 1, from the application of the régime of transit passage; or
- (b) Between an area of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone and the territorial sea of a foreign State.
  - 2. There shall be no suspension of innocent passage through such straits.

#### PART IV. ARCHIPELAGIC STATES

#### Article 46 Use of terms

For the purposes of this Convention:

- (a) "Archipelagic State" means a State constituted wholly by one or more archipelagos and may include other islands;
- (b) "Archipelago" means a group of islands, including parts of islands, interconnecting waters and other natural features which are so closely interrelated that such islands, waters and other natural features, form an intrinsic geographical, economic and political entity, or which historically have been regarded as such.

### Article 47 Archipelagic baselines

- l. An archipelagic State may draw straight archipelagic baselines joining the outermost points of the outermost islands and drying reefs of the archipelago provided that within such baselines are included the main islands and an area in which the ratio of the area of the water to the area of the land, including atolls, is between 1 to 1 and 9 to 1.
- 2. The length of such baselines shall not exceed 100 nautical miles, except that up to 3 per cent of the total number of baselines enclosing any archipelago may exceed that length, up to a maximum length of 125 nautical miles.
- 3. The drawing of such baselines shall not depart to any appreciable extent from the general configuration of the archipelago.
- 4. Such baselines shall not be drawn to and from low-tide elevations, unless lighthouses or similar installations which are permanently above sea level have been built on them or where a low-tide elevation is situated wholly or partly at a distance not exceeding the breadth of the territorial sea from the nearest island.
- 5. The system of such baselines shall not be applied by an archipelagic State in such a manner as to cut off from the high seas or the exclusive economic zone the territorial sea of another State.
- 6. The archipelagic State shall clearly indicate such baselines on charts of a scale or scales adequate for determining them. The archipelagic State shall give due publicity to such charts and shall deposit a copy of each such chart with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.
- 7. If a certain part of the archipelagic water of an archipelagic State lies between two parts of an immediately adjacent neighbouring State, existing rights and all other legitimate interests which the latter State has traditionally exercised in such waters and all rights stipulated under agreement between those States shall continue and be respected.

8. For the purposes of computing the ratio of water to land under paragraph 1, land areas may include waters lying within the fringing reefs of islands and atolls, including that part of a steep-sided oceanic plateau which is enclosed or nearly enclosed by a chain of limestone islands and drying reefs lying on the perimeter of the plateau.

## Measurement of the breadth of the territorial sea, the contiguous zone, the exclusive economic zone and the continental shelf

The breadth of the territorial sea, the contiguous zone, the exclusive economic zone and the continental shelf shall be measured from the baselines drawn in accordance with article 47.

# Article 49 Legal status of archipelagic waters, of the air space over archipelagic waters and of their bed and subsoil

- 1. The sovereignty of an archipelagic State extends to the waters enclosed by the baselines, described as archipelagic waters, regardless of their depth or distance from the coast.
- 2. This sovereignty extends to the air space over the archipelagic waters, the bed and subsoil thereof, and the resources contained therein.
  - 3. This sovereignty is exercised subject to this Part,
- 4. The régime of archipelagic sea lanes passage established in this Part shall not in other respects affect the status of the archipelagic waters, including the sea lanes, or the exercise by the archipelagic State of its sovereignty over such waters and their air space, bed and subsoil, and the resources contained therein.

### Article 50 Delimitation of internal waters

Within its archipelagic waters, the archipelagic State may draw closing lines for the delimitation of internal waters, in accordance with articles 9, 10 and 11.

# Existing agreements, traditional fishing rights and existing submarine cables

- l. Without prejudice to article 49, archipelagic States shall respect existing agreements with other States and shall recognize traditional fishing rights and other legitimate activities of the immediately adjacent neighbouring States in certain areas falling within archipelagic waters. The terms and conditions of the exercise of such rights and activities, including the nature, the extent and the areas to which they apply, shall, at the request of any of the States concerned, be regulated by bilateral agreements between them. Such rights shall not be transferred to or shared with third States or their nationals.
- 2. Archipelagic States shall respect existing submarine cables laid by other States and passing through their waters without making a landfall. Archipelagic States shall permit the maintenance and replacement of such cables upon resiving due notice of the location of such cables and the intention to repair or replace them.

### Article 52 Right of innocent passage

- 1. Subject to article 53 and without prejudice to article 50, ships of all States enjoy the right of innocent passage through archipelagic waters, in accordance with section 3 of Part II.
- 2. The archipelagic State may, without discrimination in form or in fact amongst foreign ships, suspend temporarily in specified areas of its archipelagic waters the innocent passage of foreign ships if such suspension is essential for the protection of its security. Such suspension shall take effect only after having been duly published.

### Article 53 Right of archipelagic sea lanes passage

- 1. An archipelagic State may designate sea lanes and air routes thereabove, suitable for the continuous and expeditious passage of foreign ships and aircraft through or over its archipelagic waters and the adjacent territorial sea.
- 2. All ships and aircraft enjoy the right of archipelagic sea lanes passage in such sea lanes and air routes.
- 3. Archipelagic sea lanes passage is the exercise in accordance with this Convention of the rights of navigation and overflight in the normal mode solely for the purpose of continuous, expeditious and unobstructed transit between one part of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone and another part of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone.
- 4. Such sea lanes and air routes shall traverse the archipelagic waters and the adjacent territorial sea and shall include all normal passage routes used as routes for international navigation or overflight through the archipelagic waters and, within such routes, so far as ships are concerned, all normal navigational channels, provided that duplication of routes of similar convenience between the same entry and exit points shall not be necessary.
- 5. Such sea lanes shall be defined by a scries of continuous axis lines from the entry points of passage routes to the exit points. Ships and aircraft in archipelagic sea lanes passage shall not deviate more than 25 nautical miles to either side of such axis lines during passage, provided that ships and aircraft shall not navigate closer to the coasts than 10 per cent of the distance between the nearest points on islands bordering the sea lane.
- 6. An archipelagic State which designates sea lanes under this article may also prescribe traffic separation schemes for the safe passage of ships through narrow channels in such sea lanes.
- 7. An archipelagic State may, when circumstances require, after giving due publicity thereto, substitute other sea lanes or traffic separation schemes for any sea lanes or traffic separation schemes previously designated or prescribed by it.

j

- 8. Such sea lanes and traffic separation schemes shall conform to generally accepted international regulations.
- 9. In designating or substituting sea lanes or prescribing or substituting traffic separation schemes, an archipelagic State shall refer proposals to the competent international organization with a view to their adoption. The organization may adopt only such sea lanes and traffic separation schemes as may be agreed with the archipelagic State, after which the archipelagic State may designate, prescribe or substitute them.
- 10. The archipelagic State shall clearly indicate the axis of the sea lanes and the traffic separation schemes designated or prescribed by it on charts to which due publicity shall be given.
- ll. Ships in transit shall respect applicable sea lanes and traffic separation schemes established in accordance with this article.
- 12. If an archipelagic State does not designate sea lanes or air routes, the right of archipelagic sea lanes passage may be exercised through the routes normally used for international navigation.

Duties of ships and aircraft during their passage, research and survey activities, duties of the archipelagic State and laws and regulations of the archipelagic State relating to archipelagic sea lanes passage

Articles 39, 40, 42 and 44 apply <u>mutatis mutandis</u> to archipelagic sea lanes passage.

#### PART V. EXCLUSIVE ECONOMIC ZONE

### Article 55 Specific legal régime of the exclusive economic zone

The exclusive economic zone is an area beyond and adjacent to the territorial sea, subject to the specific legal régime established in this Part, under which the rights and jurisdictions of the coastal State and the rights and freedoms of other States are governed by the relevant provisions of this Convention.

## Article 56 Rights, jurisdiction and duties of the coastal State in the exclusive economic zone

- 1. In the exclusive economic zone, the coastal State has:
- (a) sovereign rights for the purpose of exploring and exploiting, conserving and managing the natural resources, whether living or non-living, of the sea-bed and subsoil and the superjacent waters, and with regard to other activities for the economic exploitation and exploration of the zone, such as the production of energy from the water, currents and winds;
- (b) jurisdiction as provided for in the relevant provisions of this Convention with regard to:
  - (i) the establishment and use of artificial islands, installations and structures;
  - (ii) marine scientific research;
  - (iii) the protection and preservation of the marine environment;
    - (c) other rights and duties provided for in this Convention.
- 2. In exercising its rights and performing its duties under this Convention in the exclusive economic zone, the coastal State shall have due regard to the rights and duties of other States and shall act in a manner compatible with the provisions of this Convention.
- 3. The rights set out in this article with respect to the sea-bed and subsoil shall be exercised in accordance with Part VI.

### Article 57 Breadth of the exclusive economic zone

The exclusive economic zone shall not extend beyond 200 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured.

### Article 58 Rights and duties of other States in the exclusive economic zone

l. In the exclusive economic zone, all States, whether coastal or land-locked, enjoy, subject to the relevant provisions of this Convention, the freedoms referred to in article 87 of navigation and overflight and of the laying of submarine cables and pipelines, and other internationally lawful uses of the sea related to these freedoms such as those associated with the operation of ships, aircraft and submarine cables and pipelines, and compatible with the other provisions of this Convention.

- 2. Articles 88 to 115 and other pertinent rules of international law apply to the exclusive economic zone in so far as they are not incompatible with this Part.
- 3. In exercising their rights and performing their duties under this Convention in the exclusive economic zone, States shall have due regard to the rights and duties of the coastal State and shall comply with the laws and regulations adopted by the coastal State in accordance with the provisions of this Convention and other rules of international law in so far as they are not incompatible with this Part.

# Article 59 Basis for the resolution of conflicts regarding the attribution of rights and jurisdiction in the exclusive economic zone

In cases where this Convention does not attribute rights or jurisdiction to the coastal State or to other States within the exclusive economic zone, and a conflict arises between the interests of the coastal State and any other State or States, the conflict should be resolved on the basis of equity and in the light of all the relevant circumstances, taking into account the respective importance of the interests involved to the parties as well as to the international community as a whole.

## Artificial islands, installations and structures in the exclusive economic zone

- 1. In the exclusive economic zone, the coastal State shall have the exclusive right to construct and to authorize and regulate the construction, operation and use of:
  - (a) Artificial islands;
- (b) Installations and structures for the purposes provided for in article 56 and other economic purposes;
- (c) Installations and structures which may interfere with the exercise of the rights of the coastal State in the zone.
- 2. The coastal State shall have exclusive jurisdiction over such artificial islands, installations and structures, including jurisdiction with regard to customs, fiscal, health, safety and immigration regulations.
- 3. Due notice must be given of the construction of such artificial islands, installations or structures, and permanent means for giving warning of their presence must be maintained. Any installations or structures which are abandoned or disused must be entirely removed.
- 4. The coastal State may, where necessary, establish reasonable safety zones around such artificial islands, installations and structures in which it may take appropriate measures to ensure the safety both of navigation and of the artificial islands, installations and structures.

- 5. The breadth of the safety zones shall be determined by the coastal State, taking into account applicable international standards. Such zones shall be designed to ensure that they are reasonably related to the nature and function of the artificial islands, installations or structures, and shall not exceed a distance of 500 metres around them, measured from each point of their outer edge, except as authorized by generally accepted international standards or as recommended by the competent international organization.
- 6. All ships must respect these safety zones and shall comply with generally accepted international standards regarding navigation in the vicinity of artificial islands, installations, structures and safety zones. Due notice shall be given of the extent of safety zones.
- 7. Artificial islands, installations and structures and the safety zones around them may not be established where interference may be caused to the use of recognized sea lanes essential to international navigation.
- 8. Artificial islands, installations and structures have no territorial sea of their own and their presence does not affect the delimitation of the territorial sea, the exclusive economic zone or the continental shelf.

### Article 61 Conservation of the living resources

- 1. The coastal State shall determine the allowable catch of the living resources in its exclusive economic zone.
- 2. The coastal State, taking into account the best scientific evidence available to it, shall ensure through proper conservation and management measures that the maintenance of the living resources in the exclusive economic zone is not endangered by over-exploitation. As appropriate, the coastal State and competent international organizations, whether subregional, regional or global, shall co-operate to this end.
- 3. Such measures shall also be designed to maintain or restore populations of harvested species at levels which can produce the maximum sustainable yield, as qualified by relevant environmental and economic factors, including the economic needs of coastal fishing communities and the special requirements of developing States, and taking into account fishing patterns, the interdependence of stocks and any generally recommended subregional, regional or global minimum standards.
- 4. In taking such measures the coastal State shall take into consideration the effects on species associated with or dependent upon harvested species with a view to maintaining or restoring populations of such associated or dependent species above levels at which their reproduction may become seriously threatened.
- 5. Available scientific information, catch and fishing effort statistics, and other data relevant to the conservation of fish stocks shall be contributed and exchanged on a regular basis through competent international organizations, whether subregional, regional or global, where appropriate and with participation by all States concerned, including States whose nationals are allowed to fish in the exclusive economic zone.

### Article 62 Utilization of the living resources

- 1. The coastal State shall promote the objective of optimum utilization of the living resources in the exclusive economic zone without prejudice to article 61.
- 2. The coastal State shall determine its capacity to harvest the living resources of the exclusive economic zone. Where the coastal State does not have the capacity to harvest the entire allowable catch, it shall, through agreements or other arrangements and pursuant to the terms, conditions and regulations referred to in paragraph 4, give other States access to the surplus of the allowable catch having particular regard to the provisions of articles 69 and 70, especially in relation to the developing States mentioned therein.
- 3. In giving access to other States to its exclusive economic zone under this article, the coastal State shall take into account all relevant factors, including, inter alia, the significance of the living resources of the area to the economy of the coastal State concerned and its other national interests, the provisions of articles 69 and 70, the requirements of developing States in the subregion or region in harvesting part of the surplus and the need to minimize economic dislocation in States whose nationals have habitually fished in the zone or which have made substantial efforts in research and identification of stocks.
- 4. Nationals of other States fishing in the exclusive economic zone shall comply with the conservation measures and with the other terms and conditions established in the regulations of the coastal State. These regulations shall be consistent with this Convention and may relate, <u>inter alia</u>, to the following:
- (a) Licensing of fishermen, fishing vessels and equipment, including payment of fees and other forms of remuneration, which, in the case of developing coastal States, may consist of adequate compensation in the field of financing, equipment and technology relating to the fishing industry;
- (b) Determining the species which may be caught, and fixing quotas of catch, whether in relation to particular stocks or groups of stocks or catch per vessel over a period of time or to the catch by nationals of any State during a specified period;
- (c) Regulating seasons and areas of fishing, the types, sizes and amount of gear, and the numbers, sizes and types of fishing vessels that may be used;
  - (d) Fixing the age and size of fish and other species that may be caught;
- (e) Specifying information required of fishing vessels, including catch and effort statistics and vessel position reports;
- (f) Requiring, under the authorization and control of the coastal State, the conduct of specified fisheries research programmes and regulating the conduct of such research, including the sampling of catches, disposition of samples and reporting of associated scientific data;
- (g) The placing of observers or trainees on board such vessels by the coastal State:
- (h) The landing of all or any part of the catch by such vessels in the ports of the coastal State;

- (i) Terms and conditions relating to joint ventures or other co-operative arrangements;
- (j) Requirements for training personnel and transfer of fisheries technology, including enhancement of the coastal State's capability of undertaking fisheries research:
  - (k) Enforcement procedures.
- 5. Coastal States shall give due notice of conservation and management regulations.

#### Article 63

# Stocks occurring within the exclusive economic zones of two or more coastal States or both within the exclusive economic zone and in an area beyond and adjacent to it

- 1. Where the same stock or stocks of associated species occur within the exclusive economic zones of two or more coastal States, these States shall seek either directly or through appropriate subregional or regional organizations to agree upon the measures necessary to co-ordinate and ensure the conservation and development of such stocks without prejudice to the other provisions of this Part.
- 2. Where the same stock or stocks of associated species occur both within the exclusive economic zone and in an area beyond and adjacent to the zone, the coastal State and the States fishing for such stocks in the adjacent area shall seek either directly or through appropriate subregional or regional organizations to agree upon the measures necessary for the conservation of these stocks in the adjacent area.

### Article 64 Highly migratory species

- 1. The coastal State and other States whose nationals fish in the region for the highly migratory species listed in annex I shall co-operate directly or through appropriate international organizations with a view to ensuring conservation and promoting the objective of optimum utilization of such species throughout the region, both within and beyond the exclusive economic zone. In regions where no appropriate international organization exists, the coastal State and other States whose nationals harvest these species in the region shall co-operate to establish such an organization and participate in its work.
- 2. The provisions of paragraph 1 apply in addition to the other provisions of this Part.

#### Article 65 Marine mammals

Nothing in this Part restricts the right of a coastal State or the competence of an international organization, as appropriate, to prohibit, limit or regulate the exploitation of marine mammals more strictly than provided for in this Part. States shall co-operate with a view to the conservation of marine mammals and in the case of cetaceans shall in particular work through the appropriate international organizations for their conservation, management and study.

#### Article 66 Anadromous stocks

- 1. States in whose rivers anadromous stocks originate shall have the primary interest in and responsibility for such stocks.
- 2. The State of origin of anadromous stocks shall ensure their conservation by the establishment of appropriate regulatory measures for fishing in all waters landwards of the outer limits of its exclusive economic zone and for fishing provided for in paragraph 3 (b). The State of origin may, after consultations with other States referred to in paragraphs 3 and 4 fishing these stocks, establish total allowable catches for stocks originating in its rivers.
- 3. (a) Fisheries for anadromous stocks shall be conducted only in waters landwards of the outer limits of exclusive economic zones, except in cases where this provision would result in economic dislocation for a State other than the State of origin. With respect to such fishing beyond the outer limits of the exclusive economic zone, States concerned shall maintain consultations with a view to achieving agreement on terms and conditions of such fishing giving due regard to the conservation requirements and needs of the State of origin in respect of these stocks.
- (b) The State of origin shall co-operate in minimizing economic dislocation in such other States fishing these stocks, taking into account the normal catch and the mode of operations of such States, and all the areas in which such fishing has occurred.
- (c) States referred to in subparagraph (b), participating by agreement with the State of origin in measures to renew anadromous stocks, particularly by expenditures for that purpose, shall be given special consideration by the State of origin in the harvesting of stocks originating in its rivers.
- (d) Enforcement of regulations regarding anadromous stocks beyond the exclusive economic zone shall be by agreement between the State of origin and the other States concerned.
- 4. In cases where anadromous stocks migrate into or through the waters landwards of the outer limits of the exclusive economic zone of a State other than the State of origin, such State shall co-operate with the State of origin with regard to the conservation and management of such stocks.
- 5. The State of origin of anadromous stocks and other States fishing these stocks shall make arrangements for the implementation of the provisions of this article, where appropriate, through regional organizations.

### Article 67 Catadromous species

- 1. A coastal State in whose waters catadromous species spend the greater part of their life cycle shall have responsibility for the management of these species and shall ensure the ingress and egress of migrating fish.
- 2. Harvesting of catadromous species shall be conducted only in waters landwards of the outer limits of exclusive economic zones. When conducted in exclusive economic zones, harvesting shall be subject to this article and the other provisions of this Convention concerning fishing in these zones.

3. In cases where catadromous fish migrate through the exclusive economic zone of another State or States, whether as juvenile or maturing fish, the management, including harvesting, of such fish shall be regulated by agreement between the State mentioned in paragraph 1 and the State or States concerned. Such agreement shall ensure the rational management of the species and take into account the responsibilities of the State mentioned in paragraph 1 for the maintenance of these species.

### Article 68 Sedentary species

This Part does not apply to sedentary species as defined in article 77, paragraph 4.

### Article 69 Right of land-locked States

- l. Land-locked States shall have the right to participate, on an equitable basis, in the exploitation of an appropriate part of the surplus of the living resources of the exclusive economic zones of coastal States of the same subregion or region, taking into account the relevant economic and geographical circumstances of all the States concerned and in conformity with the provisions of this article and of articles 61 and 62.
- 2. The terms and modalities of such participation shall be established by the States concerned through bilateral, subregional or regional agreements taking into account, inter alia:
- (a) the need to avoid effects detrimental to fishing communities or fishing industries of the coastal State;
- (b) the extent to which the land-locked State, in accordance with the provisions of this article, is participating or is entitled to participate under existing bilateral, subregional or regional agreements in the exploitation of living resources of the exclusive economic zones of other coastal States;
- (c) the extent to which other land-locked States and States with special geographical characteristics are participating in the exploitation of the living resources of the exclusive economic zone of the coastal State and the consequent need to avoid a particular burden for any single coastal State or a part of it;
  - (d) the nutritional needs of the populations of the respective States.
- 3. When the harvesting capacity of a coastal State approaches a point which would enable it to harvest the entire allowable catch of the living resources in its exclusive economic zone, the coastal State and other States concerned shall co-operate in the establishment of equitable arrangements on a bilateral, subregional or regional basis to allow for participation of developing land-locked States of the same subregion or region in the exploitation of the living resources of the exclusive economic zones of coastal States of the subregion or region, as may be appropriate in the circumstances and on terms satisfactory to all parties. In the implementation of this provision the factors mentioned in paragraph 2 shall also be taken into account.

- 4. Developed land-locked States shall, under the provisions of this article, be entitled to participate in the exploitation of living resources only in the exclusive economic zones of developed coastal States of the same subregion or region having regard to the extent to which the coastal State, in giving access to other States to the living resources of its exclusive economic zone, has taken into account the need to minimize detrimental effects on fishing communities and economic dislocation in States whose nationals have habitually fished in the zone.
- 5. The above provisions are without prejudice to arrangements agreed upon in subregions or regions where the coastal States may grant to land-locked States of the same subregion or region equal or preferential rights for the exploitation of the living resources in the exclusive economic zones.

### Article 70 Right of States with special geographical characteristics

- 1. States with special geographical characteristics shall have the right to participate, on an equitable basis, in the exploitation of an appropriate part of the surplus of the living resources of the exclusive economic zones of coastal States of the same subregion or region, taking into account the relevant economic and geographical circumstances of all the States concerned and in conformity with the provisions of this article and of articles 61 and 62.
- 2. For the purposes of this Convention, "States with special geographical characteristics" means coastal States, including States bordering enclosed or semi-enclosed seas, whose geographical situation makes them dependent upon the exploitation of the living resources of the exclusive economic zones of other States in the subregion or region for adequate supplies of fish for the nutritional purposes of their populations or parts thereof, and coastal States which can claim no exclusive economic zones of their own.
- 3. The terms and modalities of such participation shall be established by the States concerned through bilateral, subregional or regional agreements taking into account, inter alia:
- (a) the need to avoid effects detrimental to fishing communities or fishing industries of the coastal State;
- (b) the extent to which the State with special geographical characteristics, in accordance with the provisions of this article, is participating or is entitled to participate under existing bilateral, subregional or regional agreements in the exploitation of living resources of the exclusive economic zones of other coastal States;
- (c) the extent to which other States with special geographical characteristics and land-locked States are participating in the exploitation of the living resources of the exclusive economic zone of the coastal State and the consequent need to avoid a particular burden for any single coastal State or a part of it;
  - (d) the nutritional needs of the populations of the respective States.
- 4. When the harvesting capacity of a coastal State approaches a point which would enable it to harvest the entire allowable catch of the living resources in its exclusive economic zone, the coastal State and other States concerned shall co-operate in the establishment of equitable arrangements on a bilateral, subregional or regional basis to allow for participation of developing States with

special geographical characteristics of the same subregion or region in the exploitation of the living resources of the exclusive economic zones of coastal States of the subregion or region, as may be appropriate in the circumstances and on terms satisfactory to all parties. In the implementation of this provision the factors mentioned in paragraph 3 shall also be taken into account.

- 5. Developed States with special geographical characteristics shall, under the provisions of this article, be entitled to participate in the exploitation of living resources only in the exclusive economic zones of developed coastal States of the same subregion or region having regard to the extent to which the coastal State, in giving access to other States to the living resources of its exclusive economic zone, has taken into account the need to minimize detrimental effects on fishing communities and economic dislocation in States whose nationals have habitually fished in the zone.
- 6. The above provisions are without prejudice to arrangements agreed upon in subregions or regions where the coastal States may grant to States with special geographical characteristics of the same subregion or region equal or preferential rights for the exploitation of the living resources in the exclusive economic zones.

### Article 71 Non-applicability of articles 69 and 70

The provisions of articles 69 and 70 shall not apply in the case of a coastal State whose economy is overwhelmingly dependent on the exploitation of the living resources of its exclusive economic zone.

### Article 72 Restrictions on transfer of rights

- 1. Rights provided under articles 69 and 70 to exploit living resources shall not be directly or indirectly transferred to third States or their nationals by lease or licence, by establishing joint ventures or in any other manner which has the effect of such transfer unless otherwise agreed upon by the States concerned.
- 2. The foregoing provision does not preclude the States concerned from obtaining technical or financial assistance from third States or international organizations in order to facilitate the exercise of the rights pursuant to articles 69 and 70, provided that it does not have the effect referred to in paragraph 1.

### Article 73 Enforcement of laws and regulations of the coastal State

- l. The coastal State may, in the exercise of its sovereign rights to explore, exploit, conserve and manage the living resources in the exclusive economic zone, take such measures, including boarding, inspection, arrest and judicial proceedings, as may be necessary to ensure compliance with the laws and regulations adopted by it in conformity with this Convention.
- 2. Arrested vessels and their crews shall be promptly released upon the posting of reasonable bond or other security.
- 3. Coastal State penalties for violations of fisheries regulations in the exclusive economic zone may not include imprisonment, in the absence of agreements to the contrary by the States concerned, or any other form of corporal punishment.

4. In cases of arrest or detention of foreign vessels the coastal State shall promptly notify, through appropriate channels, the flag State of the action taken and of any penalties subsequently imposed.

# Article 74 1/ Delimitation of the exclusive economic zone between States with opposite or adjacent coasts

- l. The delimitation of the exclusive economic zone between States with opposite or adjacent coasts shall be effected by agreement in conformity with international law. Such an agreement shall be in accordance with equitable principles, employing the median or equidistance line, where appropriate, and taking account of all circumstances prevailing in the area concerned.
- 2. If no agreement can be reached within a reasonable period of time, the States concerned shall resort to the procedures provided for in Part XV.
- 3. Pending agreement as provided for in paragraph 1, the States concerned, in a spirit of understanding and co-operation, shall make every effort to enter into provisional arrangements of a practical nature and, during this transitional period, not to jeopardize or hamper the reaching of the final agreement. Such arrangements shall be without prejudice to the final delimitation.
- 4. Where there is an agreement in force between the States concerned, questions relating to the delimitation of the exclusive economic zone shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of that agreement.

#### <u>Article 75</u> Charts and lists of geographical co-ordinates

- l. Subject to this Part, the outer limit lines of the exclusive economic zone and the lines of delimitation drawn in accordance with article 74 shall be shown on charts of a scale or scales adequate for determining them. Where appropriate, lists of geographical co-ordinates of points, specifying the geodetic datum, may be substituted for such outer limit lines or lines of delimitation.
- 2. The coastal State shall give due publicity to such charts or lists of geographical co-ordinates and shall deposit a copy of each such chart or list with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

<sup>1/</sup> The question of the location in this Convention of the definition of the median or equidistance line as included in article 74, paragraph 4, of the ICNT/Rev.l, could be left for consideration in the Drafting Committee. Article 74, paragraph 4, of the ICNT/Rev.l reads as follows:

<sup>&</sup>quot;For the purposes of this Convention, 'median or equidistance line' means the line every point of which is equidistant from the nearest points of the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea of each State is measured."

#### PART VI. CONTINENTAL SHELF

### Article 76 Definition of the continental shelf

- 1. The continental shelf of a coastal State comprises the sea-bed and subsoil of the submarine areas that extend beyond its territorial sea throughout the natural prolongation of its land territory to the outer edge of the continental margin, or to a distance of 200 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured where the outer edge of the continental margin does not extend up to that distance.
- 2. The continental shelf of a coastal State shall not extend beyond the limits provided for in paragraphs 4 to 6.
- 3. The continental margin comprises the submerged prolongation of the land mass of the coastal State, and consists of the sea-bed and subsoil of the shelf, the slope and the rise. It does not include the deep ocean floor with its oceanic ridges or the subsoil thereof.
- 4. (a) For the purposes of this Convention, the coastal State shall establish the outer edge of the continental margin wherever the margin extends beyond 200 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured, by either:
  - (i) A line delineated in accordance with paragraph 7 by reference to the outermost fixed points at each of which the thickness of sedimentary rocks is at least 1 per cent of the shortest distance from such point to the foot of the continental slope; or
  - (ii) A line delineated in accordance with paragraph 7 by reference to fixed points not more than 60 nautical miles from the foot of the continental slope.
- (b) In the absence of evidence to the contrary, the foot of the continental slope shall be determined as the point of maximum change in the gradient at its base.
- 5. The fixed points comprising the line of the outer limits of the continental shelf on the sea-bed, drawn in accordance with paragraph 4 (a) (i) and (ii), either shall not exceed 350 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured or shall not exceed 100 nautical miles from the 2,500 metre isobath, which is a line connecting the depth of 2,500 metres.
- 6. Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph 5, on submarine ridges, the outer limit of the continental shelf shall not exceed 350 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured. This paragraph does not apply to submarine elevations that are natural components of the continental margin, such as its plateaux, rises, caps, banks and spurs.
- 7. The coastal State shall delineate the seaward boundary of its continental shelf where that shelf extends beyond 200 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured by straight lines not exceeding 60 nautical miles in length, connecting fixed points, such points to be defined by co-ordinates of latitude and longitude.

- 8. Information on the limits of the continental shelf beyond the 200 nautical mile exclusive economic zone shall be submitted by the coastal State to the Commission on the Limits of the Continental Shelf set up under annex II on the basis of equitable geographical representation. The Commission shall make recommendations to coastal States on matters related to the establishment of the outer limits of their continental shelf. The limits of the shelf established by a coastal State on the basis of these recommendations shall be final and binding.
- 9. The coastal State shall deposit with the Secretary-General of the United Nations charts and relevant information, including geodetic data, permanently describing the outer limits of its continental shelf. The Secretary-General shall give due publicity thereto.
- 10. The provisions of this article are without prejudice to the question of delimitation of the continental shelf between adjacent or opposite States.

### Rights of the coastal State over the continental shelf

- 1. The coastal State exercises over the continental shelf sovereign rights for the purpose of exploring it and exploiting its natural resources.
- 2. The rights referred to in paragraph 1 are exclusive in the sense that if the coastal State does not explore the continental shelf or exploit its natural resources, no one may undertake these activities without the express consent of the coastal State.
- 3. The rights of the coastal State over the continental shelf do not depend on occupation, effective or notional, or on any express proclamation.
- 4. The natural resources referred to in this Part consist of the mineral and other non-living resources of the sea-bed and subsoil together with living organisms belonging to sedentary species, that is to say, organisms which, at the harvestable stage, either are immobile on or under the sea-bed or are unable to move except in constant physical contact with the sea-bed or the subsoil.

# Legal status of the superjacent waters and air space and the rights and freedoms of other States

- 1. The rights of the coastal State over the continental shelf do not affect the legal status of the superjacent waters or of the air space above those waters.
- 2. The exercise of the rights of the coastal State over the continental shelf must not infringe, or result in any unjustifiable interference with navigation and other rights and freedoms of other States as provided for in this Convention.

### Article 79 Submarine cables and pipelines on the continental shelf

- 1. All States are entitled to lay submarine cables and pipelines on the continental shelf, in accordance with the provisions of this article.
- 2. Subject to its right to take reasonable measures for the exploration of the continental shelf, the exploitation of its natural resources and the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from pipelines, the coastal State may not impede the laying or maintenance of such cables or pipelines.
- 3. The delineation of the course for the laying of such pipelines on the continental shelf is subject to the consent of the coastal State.
- 4. Nothing in this Part affects the right of the coastal State to establish conditions for cables or pipelines entering its territory or territorial sea, or its jurisdiction over cables and pipelines constructed or used in connexion with the exploration of its continental shelf or exploitation of its resources or the operations of artificial islands, installations and structures under its jurisdiction.
- 5. When laying submarine cables or pipelines, States shall pay due regard to cables or pipelines already in position. In particular, possibilities of repairing existing cables or pipelines shall not be prejudiced.

#### Article 80

#### Artificial islands, installations and structures on the continental shelf

Article 60 applies <u>mutatis mutandis</u> to artificial islands, installations and structures on the continental shelf.

### Article 81 Drilling on the continental shelf

The coastal State shall have the exclusive right to authorize and regulate drilling on the continental shelf for all purposes.

#### Article 82

### Payments and contributions with respect to the exploitation of the continental shelf beyond 200 nautical miles

- 1. The coastal State shall make payments or contributions in kind in respect of the exploitation of the non-living resources of the continental shelf beyond 200 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured.
- 2. The payments and contributions shall be made annually with respect to all production at a site after the first five years of production at that site. For the sixth year, the rate of payment or contribution shall be 1 per cent of the value or volume of production at the site. The rate shall increase by 1 per cent for each subsequent year until the twelfth year and shall remain at 7 per cent thereafter. Production does not include resources used in connexion with exploitation.

- 3. A developing State which is a net importer of a mineral resource produced from its continental shelf is exempt from making such payments or contributions in respect of that mineral resource.
- 4. The payments or contributions shall be made through the Authority, which shall distribute them to States Parties to this Convention, on the basis of equitable sharing criteria, taking into account the interests and needs of developing States, particularly the least developed and the land-locked amongst them.

# Article 83 Delimitation of the continental shelf between States with opposite or adjacent coasts

- 1. The delimitation of the continental shelf between States with opposite or adjacent coasts shall be effected by agreement in conformity with international law. Such an agreement shall be in accordance with equitable principles, employing the median or equidistance line, where appropriate, and taking account of all circumstances prevailing in the area concerned.
- 2. If no agreement can be reached within a reasonable period of time, the States concerned shall resort to the procedures provided for in Part XV.
- 3. Pending agreement as provided for in paragraph 1, the States concerned, in a spirit of understanding and co-operation, shall make every effort to enter into provisional arrangements of a practical nature and, during this transitional period, not to jeopardize or hamper the reaching of the final agreement. Such arrangements shall be without prejudice to the final delimitation.
- 4. Where there is an agreement in force between the States concerned, questions relating to the delimitation of the continental shelf shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of that agreement.

### Charts and lists of geographical co-ordinates

- l. Subject to this Part, the outer limit lines of the continental shelf and the lines of delimitation drawn in accordance with article 83 shall be shown on charts of a scale or scales adequate for determining them. Where appropriate, lists of geographical co-ordinates of points, specifying the geodetic datum, may be substituted for such outer limit lines or lines of delimitation.
- 2. The coastal State shall give due publicity to such charts or lists of geographical co-ordinates and shall deposit a copy of each such chart or list with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

#### Article 85 Tunnelling

This Part does not prejudice the right of the coastal State to exploit the subsoil by means of tunnelling, irrespective of the depth of water above the subsoil.

#### PART VII. HIGH SEAS

#### SECTION 1. GENERAL

### Article 86 Application of the provisions of this Part

The provisions of this Part apply to all parts of the sea that are not included in the exclusive economic zone, in the territorial sea or in the internal waters of a State, or in the archipelagic waters of an archipelagic State. This article does not entail any abridgement of the freedoms enjoyed by all States in the exclusive economic zone in accordance with article 58.

### Article 87 Freedom of the high seas

- 1. The high seas are open to all States, whether coastal or land-locked. Freedom of the high seas is exercised under the conditions laid down by this Convention and by other rules of international law. It comprises, inter alia, both for coastal and land-locked States;
  - (a) Freedom of navigation;
  - (b) Freedom of overflight;
  - (c) Freedom to lay submarine cables and pipelines, subject to Part VI;
- (d) Freedom to construct artifical islands and other installations permitted under international law, subject to Part VI;
  - (e) Freedom of fishing, subject to the conditions laid down in section 2;
  - (f) Freedom of scientific research, subject to Parts VI and XIII.
- 2. These freedoms shall be exercised by all States, with due consideration for the interests of other States in their exercise of the freedom of the high seas, and also with due consideration for the rights under this Convention with respect to activities in the Area.

### Article 88 Reservation of the high seas for peaceful purposes

The high seas shall be reserved for peaceful purposes.

### Article 89 Invalidity of claims of sovereignty over the high seas

No State may validly purport to subject any part of the high seas to its sovereignty.

#### Article 90 Right of navigation

Every State, whether coastal or land-locked, has the right to sail ships under its flag on the high seas.

#### Article 91 Nationality of ships

- 1. Each State shall fix the conditions for the grant of its nationality to ships, for the registration of ships in its territory, and for the right to fly its flag. Ships have the nationality of the State whose flag they are entitled to fly. There must exist a genuine link between the State and the ship.
- 2. Each State shall issue to ships to which it has granted the right to fly its flag documents to that effect.

#### Article 92 Status of ships

- 1. Ships shall sail under the flag of one State only and, save in exceptional cases expressly provided for in international treaties or in this Convention, shall be subject to its exclusive jurisdiction on the high seas. A ship may not change its flag during a voyage or while in a port of call, save in the case of a real transfer of ownership or change of registry.
- 2. A ship which sails under the flags of two or more States, using them according to convenience, may not claim any of the nationalities in question with respect to any other State, and may be assimilated to a ship without nationality.

## Ships flying the flag of the United Nations, its specialized agencies and the International Atomic Energy Agency

The preceding articles do not prejudice the question of ships employed on the official service of the United Nations, its specialized agencies or the International Atomic Energy Agency, flying the flag of the organization.

### Article 94 Duties of the flag State

- 1. Every State shall effectively exercise its jurisdiction and control in administrative, technical and social matters over ships flying its flag.
  - 2. In particular every State shall:
- (a) Maintain a register of shipping containing the names and particulars of ships flying its flag, except those which are excluded from generally accepted international regulations on account of their small size; and
- (b) Assume jurisdiction under its internal law over each ship flying its flag and its master, officers and crew in respect of administrative, technical and social matters concerning the ship.
- 3. Every State shall take such measures for ships flying its flag as are necessary to ensure safety at sea with regard, inter alia, to:
  - (a) The construction, equipment and seaworthiness of ships;
- (b) The manning of ships, labour conditions and the training of crews, taking into account the applicable international instruments;
- (c) The use of signals, the maintenance of communications and the prevention of collisions.

- 4. Such measures shall include those necessary to ensure:
- (a) That each ship, before registration and thereafter at appropriate intervals, is surveyed by a qualified surveyor of ships, and has on board such charts, nautical publications and navigational equipment and instruments as are appropriate for the safe navigation of the ship;
- (b) That each ship is in the charge of a master and officers who possess appropriate qualifications, in particular in seamanship, navigation, communications and marine engineering, and that the crew is appropriate in qualification and numbers for the type, size, machinery and equipment of the ship;
- (c) That the master, officers and, to the extent appropriate, the crew are fully conversant with and required to observe the applicable international regulations concerning the safety of life at sea, the prevention of collisions, the prevention, reduction and control of marine pollution, and the maintenance of communications by radio.
- 5. In taking the measures called for in paragraphs 3 and 4 each State is required to conform to generally accepted international regulations, procedures and practices and to take any steps which may be necessary to secure their observance.
- 6. A State which has clear grounds to believe that proper jurisdiction and control with respect to a ship have not been exercised may report the facts to the flag State. Upon receiving such a report, the flag State shall investigate the matter and, if appropriate, take any action necessary to remedy the situation.
- 7. Each State shall cause an inquiry to be held by or before a suitably qualified person or persons into every marine casualty or incident of navigation on the high seas involving a ship flying its flag and causing loss of life or serious injury to nationals of another State or serious damage to shipping or installations of another State or to the marine environment. The flag State and the other State shall co-operate in the conduct of any inquiry held by that other State into any such marine casualty or incident of navigation.

### Article 95 Immunity of warships on the high seas

Warships on the high seas have complete immunity from the jurisdiction of any State other than the flag State.

### Article 96 Immunity of ships used only on government non-commercial service

Ships owned or operated by a State and used only on government non-commercial service shall, on the high seas, have complete immunity from the jurisdiction of any State other than the flag State.

### Article 97 Penal jurisdiction in matters of collision

1. In the event of a collision or any other incident of navigation concerning a ship on the high seas, involving the penal or disciplinary responsibility of the master or of any other person in the service of the ship, no penal or disciplinary proceedings may be instituted against such person except before the judicial or administrative authorities either of the flag State or of the State of which such person is a national.

- 2. In disciplinary matters, the State which has issued a master's certificate or a certificate of competence or licence shall alone be competent, after due legal process, to pronounce the withdrawal of such certificates, even if the holder is not a national of the State which issued them.
- 3. No arrest or detention of the ship, even as a measure of investigation, shall be ordered by any authorities other than those of the flag State.

### Article 98 Duty to render assistance

- 1. Every State shall require the master of a ship sailing under its flag, in so far as he can do so without serious danger to the ship, the crew or the passengers:
  - (a) To render assistance to any person found at sea in danger of being lost;
- (b) To proceed with all possible speed to the rescue of persons in distress, if informed of their need of assistance, in so far as such action may reasonably be expected of him;
- (c) After a collision, to render assistance to the other ship, its crew and its passengers and, where possible, to inform the other ship of the name of his own ship, its port of registry and the nearest port at which it will call.
- 2. Every coastal State shall promote the establishment, operation and maintenance of an adequate and effective search and rescue service regarding safety on and over the sea and, where circumstances so require, by way of mutual regional arrangements co-operate with neighbouring States for this purpose.

### Article 99 Prohibition of the transport of slaves

Every State shall take effective measures to prevent and punish the transport of slaves in ships authorized to fly its flag and to prevent the unlawful use of its flag for that purpose. Any slave taking refuge on board any ship, whatever its flag, shall, <u>ipso facto</u>, be free.

### Article 100 Duty to co-operate in the repression of piracy

All States shall co-operate to the fullest possible extent in the repression of piracy on the high seas or in any other place outside the jurisdiction of any State.

#### Article 101 Definition of piracy

Piracy consists of any of the following acts:

(a) Any illegal acts of violence, detention or any act of depredation, committed for private ends by the crew or the passengers of a private ship or a private aircraft, and directed:

- (i) On the high seas, against another ship or aircraft, or against persons or property on board such ship or aircraft;
- (ii) Against a ship, aircraft, persons or property in a place outside the jurisdiction of any State;
- (b) Any act of voluntary participation in the operation of a ship or of an aircraft with knowledge of facts making it a pirate ship or aircraft;
- (c) Any act of inciting or of intentionally facilitating an act described in subparagraphs (a) or (b).

# Article 102 Piracy by a warship, government ship or government aircraft whose crew has mutinied

The acts of piracy, as defined in article 101, committed by a warship, government ship or government aircraft whose crew has mutinied and taken control of the ship or aircraft are assimilated to acts committed by a private ship.

### Article 103 Definition of a pirate ship or aircraft

A ship or aircraft is considered a pirate ship or aircraft if it is intended by the persons in dominant control to be used for the purpose of committing one of the acts referred to in article 101. The same applies if the ship or aircraft has been used to commit any such act, so long as it remains under the control of the persons guilty of that act.

### Article 104 Retention or loss of the nationality of a pirate ship or aircraft

A ship or aircraft may retain its nationality although it has become a pirate ship or aircraft. The retention or loss of nationality is determined by the law of the State from which such nationality was derived.

### Article 105 Seizure of a pirate ship or aircraft

On the high seas, or in any other place outside the jurisdiction of any State, every State may seize a pirate ship or aircraft, or a ship taken by piracy and under the control of pirates, and arrest the persons and seize the property on board. The courts of the State which carried out the seizure may decide upon the penalties to be imposed, and may also determine the action to be taken with regard to the ships, aircraft or property, subject to the rights of third parties acting in good faith.

### Article 106 Liability for seizure without adequate grounds

Where the seizure of a ship or aircraft on suspicion of piracy has been effected without adequate grounds, the State making the seizure shall be liable to the State the nationality of which is possessed by the ship or aircraft, for any loss or damage caused by the seizure.

### Article 107 Ships and aircraft which are entitled to seize on account of piracy

A seizure on account of piracy may only be carried out by warships or military aircraft, or other ships or aircraft clearly marked and identifiable as being on government service and authorized to that effect.

### Article 108 Illicit traffic in narcotic drugs or psychotropic substances

- 1. All States shall co-operate in the suppression of illicit traffic in narcotic drugs and psychotropic substances by ships on the high seas contrary to international conventions.
- 2. Any State which has reasonable grounds for believing that a vessel flying its flag is engaged in illicit traffic in narcotic drugs or psychotropic substances may request the co-operation of other States to suppress such traffic.

### Article 109 Unauthorized broadcasting from the high seas

- 1. All States shall co-operate in the suppression of unauthorized broadcasting from the high seas.
- 2. Any person engaged in unauthorized broadcasting from the high seas may be prosecuted before the court of the flag State of the vessel, the place of registry of the installation, the State of which the person is a national, any place where the transmissions can be received or any State where authorized radio communication is suffering interference.
- 3. On the high seas, a State having jurisdiction in accordance with paragraph 2 may, in conformity with article 110, arrest any person or ship engaged in unauthorized broadcasting and seize the broadcasting apparatus.
- 4. For the purposes of this Convention, "unauthorized broadcasting" means the transmission of sound radio or television broadcasts from a ship or installation on the high seas intended for reception by the general public contrary to international regulations, but excluding the transmission of distress calls.

#### Article 110 Right of visit

- 1. Except where acts of interference derive from powers conferred by treaty, a warship which encounters on the high seas a foreign ship, other than a ship entitled to complete immunity in accordance with articles 95 and 96, is not justified in boarding her unless there is reasonable ground for suspecting:
  - (a) That the ship is engaged in piracy;
  - (b) That the ship is engaged in the slave trade;
- (c) That the ship is engaged in unauthorized broadcasting and the warship has jurisdiction under article 109;
  - (d) That the ship is without nationality; or

- (e) That, though flying a foreign flag or refusing to show its flag, the ship is, in reality, of the same nationality as the warship.
- 2. In the cases provided for in paragraph 1, the warship may proceed to verify the ship's right to fly its flag. To this end, it may send a boat, under the command of an officer, to the suspected ship. If suspicion remains after the documents have been checked, it may proceed to a further examination on board the ship, which must be carried out with all possible consideration.
- 3. If the suspicions prove to be unfounded, and provided that the ship boarded has not committed any act justifying them, it shall be compensated for any loss or damage that may have been sustained.
  - 4. These provisions shall apply mutatis mutandis to military aircraft.
- 5. These provisions shall also apply to any other duly authorized ships or aircraft clearly marked and identifiable as being on government service.

### Article 111 Right of hot pursuit

- 1. The hot pursuit of a foreign ship may be undertaken when the competent authorities of the coastal State have good reason to believe that the ship has violated the laws and regulations of that State. Such pursuit must be commenced when the foreign ship or one of its boats is within the internal waters, the archipelagic waters, the territorial sea or the contiguous zone of the pursuing State, and may only be continued outside the territorial sea or the contiguous zone if the pursuit has not been interrupted. It is not necessary that, at the time when the foreign ship within the territorial sea or the contiguous zone receives the order to stop, the ship giving the order should likewise be within the territorial sea or the contiguous zone. If the foreign ship is within a contiguous zone, as defined in article 33, the pursuit may only be undertaken if there has been a violation of the rights for the protection of which the zone was established.
- 2. The right of hot pursuit shall apply <u>mutatis mutandis</u> to violations in the exclusive economic zone or on the continental shelf, including safety zones around continental shelf installations, of the laws and regulations of the coastal State applicable in accordance with this Convention to the exclusive economic zone or the continental shelf, including such safety zones.
- 3. The right of hot pursuit ceases as soon as the ship pursued enters the territorial sea of its own country or of a third State.
- 4. Hot pursuit is not deemed to have begun unless the pursuing ship has satisfied itself by such practicable means as may be available that the ship pursued or one of its boats or other craft working as a team and using the ship pursued as a mother ship are within the limits of the territorial sea, or, as the case may be, within the contiguous zone or the exclusive economic zone or above the continental shelf. The pursuit may only be commenced after a visual or auditory signal to stop has been given at a distance which enables it to be seen or heard by the foreign ship.
- 5. The right of hot pursuit may be exercised only by warships or military aircraft, or other ships or aircraft clearly marked and identifiable as being on government service and specially authorized to that effect.

- 6. Where hot pursuit is effected by an aircraft:
- (a) The provisions of paragraphs 1 to 4 shall apply mutatis mutandis;
- (b) The aircraft giving the order to stop must itself actively pursue the ship until a ship or aircraft of the coastal State, summoned by the aircraft, arrives to take over the pursuit, unless the aircraft is itself able to arrest the ship. It does not suffice to justify an arrest outside the territorial sea that the ship was merely sighted by the aircraft as an offender or suspected offender, if it was not both ordered to stop and pursued by the aircraft itself or other aircraft or ships which continue the pursuit without interruption.
- 7. The release of a ship arrested within the jurisdiction of a State and escorted to a port of that State for the purposes of an inquiry before the competent authorities may not be claimed solely on the ground that the ship, in the course of its voyage, was escorted across a portion of the exclusive economic zone or the high seas, if the circumstances rendered this necessary.
- 8. Where a ship has been stopped or arrested outside the territorial sea in circumstances which do not justify the exercise of the right of hot pursuit, it shall be compensated for any loss or damage that may have been thereby sustained.

### Article 112 Right to lay submarine cables and pipelines

- 1. All States shall be entitled to lay submarine cables and pipelines on the bed of the high seas beyond the continental shelf.
  - 2. Article 79, paragraph 5, applies to such cables and pipelines.

### Article 113 Breaking or injury of a submarine cable or pipeline

Every State shall adopt the laws and regulations necessary to provide that the breaking or injury by a ship flying its flag or by a person subject to its jurisdiction of a submarine cable beneath the high seas done wilfully or through culpable negligence, in such a manner as to be liable to interrupt or obstruct telegraphic or telephonic communications, and similarly the breaking or injury of a submarine pipeline or high-voltage power cable, shall be a punishable offence. This provision shall apply also to conduct calculated or likely to result in such breaking or injury. However, it shall not apply to any break or injury caused by persons who acted merely with the legitimate object of saving their lives or their ships, after having taken all necessary precautions to avoid such break or injury.

## Article 114 Breaking or injury by owners of a submarine cable or pipeline of another submarine cable or pipeline

Every State shall adopt the laws and regulations necessary to provide that, if persons subject to its jurisdiction who are the owners of a cable or a pipeline beneath the high seas, in laying or repairing that cable or pipeline, cause a break in or injury to another cable or pipeline, they shall bear the cost of the repairs.

## Article 115 Indemnity for loss incurred in avoiding injury to a submarine cable or pipeline

Every State shall adopt the laws and regulations necessary to ensure that the owners of ships who can prove that they have sacrificed an anchor, a net or any other fishing gear, in order to avoid injuring a submarine cable or pipeline, shall be indemnified by the owner of the cable or pipeline, provided that the owner of the ship has taken all reasonable precautionary measures beforehand.

### SECTION 2. MANAGEMENT AND CONSERVATION OF THE LIVING RESOURCES OF THE HIGH SEAS

### Article 116 Right to fish on the high seas

All States have the right for their nationals to engage in fishing on the high seas subject to:

- (a) Their treaty obligations;
- (b) The rights and duties as well as the interests of coastal States provided for, inter alia, in article 63, paragraph 2, and articles 64 to 67; and
  - (c) The provisions of this section.

## Duty of States to adopt with respect to their nationals measures for the conservation of the living resources of the high seas

All States have the duty to take, or to co-operate with other States in taking, such measures for their respective nationals as may be necessary for the conservation of the living resources of the high seas.

## Article 118 Co-operation of States in the management and conservation of living resources

States shall co-operate with each other in the management and conservation of living resources in the areas of the high seas. States whose nationals exploit identical resources, or different resources in the same area, shall enter into negotiations with a view to adopting the means necessary for the conservation of the living resources concerned. They shall, as appropriate, co-operate to establish subregional or regional fisheries organizations to this end.

## Conservation of the living resources of the high seas

1. In determining the allowable catch and establishing other conservation measures for the living resources in the high seas, States shall:

- (a) Adopt measures which are designed, on the best scientific evidence available to the States concerned, to maintain or restore populations of harvested species at levels which can produce the maximum sustainable yield, as qualified by relevant environmental and economic factors, including the special requirements of developing States, and taking into account fishing patterns, the interdependence of stocks and any generally recommended subregional, regional or global minimum standards;
- (b) Take into consideration the effects on species associated with or dependent upon harvested species with a view to maintaining or restoring populations of such associated or dependent species above levels at which their reproduction may become seriously threatened.
- 2. Available scientific information, catch and fishing effort statistics, and other data relevant to the conservation of fish stocks shall be contributed and exchanged on a regular basis through competent international organizations, whether subregional, regional or global, where appropriate and with participation by all States concerned.
- 3. States concerned shall ensure that conservation measures and their implementation do not discriminate in form or in fact against the fishermen of any State.

#### Article 120 Marine mammals

Article 65 also applies to the conservation and management of marine mammals in the high seas.

#### PART VIII. RÉGIME OF ISLANDS

#### Article 121 Régime of islands

- 1. An island is a naturally formed area of land, surrounded by water, which is above water at high tide.
- 2. Except as provided for in paragraph 3, the territorial sea, the contiguous zone, the exclusive economic zone and the continental shelf of an island are determined in accordance with the provisions of this Convention applicable to other land territory.
- 3. Rocks which cannot sustain human habitation or economic life of their own shall have no exclusive economic zone or continental shelf.

#### PART IX. ENCLOSED OR SEMI-ENCLOSED SEAS

#### Article 122 Definition

For the purposes of this Convention, "enclosed or semi-enclosed sea" means a gulf, basin, or sea surrounded by two or more States and connected to the open seas by a narrow outlet or consisting entirely or primarily of the territorial seas and exclusive economic zones of two or more coastal States.

### Article 123 Co-operation of States bordering enclosed or semi-enclosed seas

States bordering enclosed or semi-enclosed seas should co-operate with each other in the exercise of their rights and duties under this Convention. To this end they shall endeavour, directly or through an appropriate regional organization:

- (a) To co-ordinate the management, conservation, exploration and exploitation of the living resources of the sea;
- (b) To co-ordinate the implementation of their rights and duties with respect to the protection and preservation of the marine environment;
- (c) To co-ordinate their scientific research policies and undertake where appropriate joint programmes of scientific research in the area;
- (d) To invite, as appropriate, other interested States or international organizations to co-operate with them in furtherance of the provisions of this article.

### PART X. RIGHT OF ACCESS OF LAND-LOCKED STATES TO AND FROM THE SEA AND FREEDOM OF TRANSIT

#### Article 124 Use of terms

- 1. For the purposes of this Convention:
- (a) "Land-locked State" means a State which has no sea-coast;
- (b) "Transit State" means a State, with or without a sea-coast, situated between a land-locked State and the sea through whose territory "traffic in transit" passes;
- (c) "Traffic in transit" means transit of persons, baggage, goods and means of transport across the territory of one or more transit States, when the passage across such territory, with or without trans-shipment, warehousing, breaking bulk or change in the mode of transport, is only a portion of a complete journey which begins or terminates within the territory of the land-locked State;
  - (d) "Means of transport" means:
  - (i) Railway rolling stock, sea, lake and river craft and road vehicles;
  - (ii) Where local conditions so require, porters and pack animals.
- 2. Land-locked States and transit States may, by agreement between them, include as means of transport pipelines and gas lines and means of transport other than those included in paragraph 1.

### Article 125 Right of access to and from the sea and freedom of transit

- 1. Land-locked States shall have the right of access to and from the sea for the purpose of exercising the rights provided for in this Convention including those relating to the freedom of the high seas and the common heritage of mankind. To this end, land-locked States shall enjoy freedom of transit through the territory of transit States by all means of transport.
- 2. The terms and modalities for exercising freedom of transit shall be agreed between the land-locked States and the transit States concerned through bilateral, subregional or regional agreements.
- 3. Transit States, in the exercise of their full sovereignty over their territory, shall have the right to take all measures necessary to ensure that the rights and facilities provided for in this Part for land-locked States shall in no way infringe their legitimate interests.

### Article 126 Exclusion of application of the most-favoured-nation clause

Provisions of this Convention, as well as special agreements relating to the exercise of the right of access to and from the sea, establishing rights and facilities on account of the special geographical position of land-locked States, are excluded from the application of the most-favoured-nation clause.

### Article 127 Customs duties, taxes and other charges

- 1. Traffic in transit shall not be subject to any customs duties, taxes or other charges except charges levied for specific services rendered in connexion with such traffic.
- 2. Means of transport in transit and other facilities provided for and used by land-locked States shall not be subject to taxes or charges higher than those levied for the use of means of transport of the transit State.

### Article 128 Free zones and other customs facilities

For the convenience of traffic in transit, free zones or other customs facilities may be provided at the ports of entry and exit in the transit States, by agreement between those States and the land-locked States.

### Article 129 Co-operation in the construction and improvement of means of transport

Where there are no means of transport in the transit States to give effect to the freedom of transit or where the existing means, including the port installations and equipment, are inadequate in any respect, transit States and the land-locked States concerned may co-operate in constructing or improving them.

## Article 130 Measures to avoid or eliminate delays or other difficulties of a technical nature in traffic in transit

- 1. Transit States shall take all appropriate measures to avoid delays or other difficulties of a technical nature in traffic in transit.
- 2. Should such delays or difficulties occur, the competent authorities of the transit States and of land-locked States shall co-operate towards their expeditious elimination.

### Article 131 Equal treatment in maritime ports

Ships flying the flag of land-locked States shall enjoy treatment equal to that accorded to other foreign ships in maritime ports.

### Article 132 Grant of greater transit facilities

This Convention does not entail in any way the withdrawal of transit facilities which are greater than those provided for in this Convention and which are agreed between States Parties to this Convention or granted by a State Party. This Convention also does not preclude such grant of greater facilities in the future.

#### PART XI. THE AREA

#### SECTION 1. GENERAL

#### Article 133 Use of terms

For the purposes of this Part:

- (a) "Resources" means mineral resources in situ. When recovered from the Area, such resources shall be regarded as minerals.
  - (b) Resources shall include:
  - (i) Liquid or gaseous substances at or beneath the surface such as petroleum, gas, condensate, helium, and also sulphur and salts recovered in liquid form;
  - (ii) Solid substances occurring on the surface or at depths of less than three metres below the surface, including polymetallic nodules;
  - (iii) Solid substances at depths of more than three metres below the surface;
  - (iv) Metal-bearing brine at or beneath the surface.

### Article 134 Scope of this Part

- 1. This Part shall apply to the Area.
- 2. States Parties shall notify the Authority established pursuant to article 156 of the limits referred to in article 1, paragraph 1, determined by co-ordinates of latitude and longitude and shall indicate the same on appropriate large-scale charts officially recognized by that State.
- 3. The Authority shall register and publish such notification in accordance with rules adopted by it for the purpose.
- 4. Nothing in this article shall affect the validity of any agreement between States with respect to the establishment of limits between States with opposite or adjacent coasts.
  - 5. Activities in the Area shall be governed by the provisions of this Part.

## Article 135 Legal status of the superjacent waters and air space

Neither the provisions of this Part nor any rights granted or exercised pursuant thereto shall affect the legal status of the waters superjacent to the Area or that of the air space above those waters.

### SECTION 2. PRINCIPLES GOVERNING THE AREA

### Article 136 Common heritage of mankind

The Area and its resources are the common heritage of mankind.

### Article 137 Legal status of the Area and its resources

- 1. No State shall claim or exercise sovereignty or sovereign rights over any part of the Area or its resources, nor shall any State or natural or juridical person appropriate any part thereof. No such claim or exercise of sovereignty or sovereign rights, nor such appropriation shall be recognized.
- 2. All rights in the resources of the Area are vested in mankind as a whole, on whose behalf the Authority shall act. These resources are not subject to alienation. The minerals derived from the Area, however, may only be alienated in accordance with this Part and the rules and regulations adopted thereunder.
- 3. No State or natural or juridical person shall claim, acquire or exercise rights with respect to the minerals of the Area except in accordance with the provisions of this Part. Otherwise, no such claim, acquisition or exercise of such rights shall be recognized.

# Article 138 General conduct of States in relation to the Area

The general conduct of States in relation to the Area shall be in accordance with the provisions of this Part, the principles embodied in the Charter of the United Nations and other rules of international law in the interests of maintaining peace and security and promoting international co-operation and mutual understanding.

# Article 139 Responsibility to ensure compliance and liability for damage

l. States Parties shall have the responsibility to ensure that activities in the Area, whether undertaken by States Parties, or State enterprises, or natural or juridical persons which possess the nationality of States Parties or are effectively controlled by them or their nationals, shall be carried out in conformity with the provisions of this Part. The same responsibility applies to international organizations for activities in the Area undertaken by such organizations. Without prejudice to applicable principles of international law and article 22 of annex III, damage caused by the failure of a State Party to carry out its responsibilities under this Part shall entail liability. A State Party shall not however be liable for damage caused by any failure to comply by a person whom it has sponsored under article 153, paragraph 2 (b), if the State Party has taken all necessary and appropriate measures to secure effective compliance under article 153, paragraph 4 and article 4, paragraph 3 of annex III.

- 2. A group of States Parties or a group of international organizations, acting together, shall be jointly and severally responsible under these articles.
- 3. States Parties shall take appropriate measures to ensure that the responsibility provided for in paragraph 1 shall apply <u>mutatis mutandis</u> to international organizations.

## Article 140 Benefit of Mankind

- l. Activities in the Area shall, as specifically provided for in this Part, be carried out for the benefit of mankind as a whole, irrespective of the geographical location of States, whether coastal or land-locked, and taking into particular consideration the interests and needs of the developing States and peoples who have not attained full independence or other self-governing status recognized by the United Nations in accordance with General Assembly resolution 1514 (XV) and other relevant General Assembly resolutions.
- 2. The Authority shall provide for the equitable sharing of financial and other economic benefits derived from activities in the Area through any appropriate mechanism, on a non-discriminatory basis, in accordance with article 160, paragraph 2 (f).

# Article 141 Use of the Area exclusively for peaceful purposes

The Area shall be open to use exclusively for peaceful purposes by all States, whether coastal or land-locked, without discrimination and without prejudice to the other provisions of this Part.

# Article 142 Rights and legitimate interests of coastal States

- 1. Activities in the Area, with respect to resource deposits in the Area which lie across limits of national jurisdiction, shall be conducted with due regard to the rights and legitimate interests of any coastal State across whose jurisdiction such resources lie.
- 2. Consultations, including a system of prior notification, shall be maintained with the State concerned, with a view to avoiding infringement of such rights and interests. In cases where activities in the Area may result in the exploitation of resources lying within national jurisdiction, the prior consent of the coastal State concerned shall be required.
- 3. Neither the provisions of this Part nor any rights granted or exercised pursuant thereto shall affect the rights of coastal States to take such measures consistent with the relevant provisions of Part XII as may be necessary to prevent, mitigate or eliminate grave and imminent danger to their coastlines, or related interests from pollution or threat thereof or from other hazardous occurrences resulting from or caused by any activities in the Area.

### SECTION 3. CONDUCT OF ACTIVITIES IN THE AREA

### Article 143 Marine scientific research

- 1. Marine scientific research in the Area shall be carried out exclusively for peaceful purposes and for the benefit of mankind as a whole, in accordance with Part XIII.
- 2. The Authority may carry out marine scientific research concerning the Area and its resources, and may enter into contracts for that purpose. The Authority shall promote and encourage the conduct of marine scientific research in the Area, and shall co-ordinate and disseminate the results of such research and analysis when available.
- 3. States Parties may carry out marine scientific research in the Area. States Parties shall promote international co-operation in marine scientific research in the Area by:
- (a) Participating in international programmes and encouraging co-operation in marine scientific research by personnel of different countries and of the Authority;
- (b) Ensuring that programmes are developed through the Authority or other international organizations as appropriate for the benefit of developing States and technologically less developed States with a view to
  - (i) Strengthening their research capabilities;
  - (ii) Training their personnel and the personnel of the Authority in the techniques and applications of research;
  - (iii) Fostering the employment of their qualified personnel in activities of research in the Area:
- (c) Effectively disseminating the results of research and analysis when available, through the Authority or other international channels when appropriate.

### Article 144 Transfer of technology

- 1. The Authority shall take measures in accordance with this Convention:
- (a) to acquire technology and scientific knowledge relating to activities in the Area; and
- (b) to promote and encourage the transfer to developing States of such technology and scientific knowledge so that all States Parties benefit therefrom.
- 2. To this end the Authority and the States Parties shall co-operate in promoting the transfer of technology and scientific knowledge relating to activities in the Area so that the Enterprise and all States Parties may benefit therefrom. In particular they shall initiate and promote:

- (a) Programmes for the transfer of technology to the Enterprise and to developing States with regard to activities in the Area, including, <u>inter alia</u>, facilitating the access of the Enterprise and of developing States to the relevant technology, under fair and reasonable terms and conditions;
- (b) Measures directed towards the advancement of the technology of the Enterprise and the domestic technology of developing States, particularly opportunities to personnel from the Enterprise and from developing States for training in marine science and technology and their full participation in activities in the Area.

### Article 145 Protection of the marine environment

With respect to activities in the Area, necessary measures shall be taken in order to ensure effective protection for the marine environment from harmful effects which may arise from such activities in accordance with Part XII. To that end the Authority shall adopt appropriate rules, regulations and procedures for <u>inter alia</u>:

- (a) The prevention of pollution and contamination, and other hazards to the marine environment, including the coastline, and of interference with the ecological balance of the marine environment, particular attention being paid to the need for protection from the consequences of such activities as drilling, dredging, excavation, disposal of waste, construction and operation or maintenance of installations, pipelines and other devices related to such activities;
- (b) The protection and conservation of the natural resources of the Area and the prevention of damage to the flora and fauna of the marine environment.

## Article 146 Protection of human life

With respect to activities in the Area, necessary measures shall be taken in order to ensure effective protection of human life. To that end the Authority shall adopt appropriate rules, regulations and procedures to supplement existing international law as reflected in specific treaties which may be applicable.

# Article 147 Accommodation of activities in the Area and in the marine environment

- 1. Activities in the Area shall be carried out with reasonable regard for other activities in the marine environment.
- 2. Stationary and mobile installations used for the conduct of activities in the Area shall be subject to the following conditions:
- (a) Such installations shall be erected, emplaced and removed solely in accordance with the provisions of this Part and subject to rules and regulations adopted by the Authority. The erection, emplacement and removal of such installations shall be the subject of timely notification through Notices to Mariners or other generally recognized means of notification;

- (b) Such installations shall not be located where they may obstruct passage through sea lanes of vital importance for international shipping or in areas of intense fishing activity;
- (c) Safety zones shall be established around such installations with appropriate markings to ensure the safety both of the installations themselves and of shipping. The configuration and location of such safety zones shall not be such as to form a belt impeding the lawful access of shipping to particular maritime zones or navigation along international sea lanes;
  - (d) Such installations shall be used exclusively for peaceful purposes;
- (e) Such installations do not possess the status of islands. They have no territorial sea of their own, and their presence does not affect the delimitation of the territorial sea, the exclusive economic zone or the continental shelf.
- 3. Other activities in the marine environment shall be conducted with reasonable regard for activities in the Area.

# Article 148 Participation of developing States in activities in the Area

The effective participation of developing States in activities in the Area shall be promoted as specifically provided for in this Part, having due regard to their special needs and interests, and in particular the special needs of the land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States among them, in overcoming obstacles arising from their disadvantaged location, including remoteness from and access to and from the Area.

### Article 149 Archaeological and historical objects

All objects of an archaeological and historical nature found in the Area shall be preserved or disposed of for the benefit of mankind as a whole, particular regard being paid to the preferential rights of the State or country of origin, or the State of cultural origin, or the State of historical and archaeological origin.

#### SECTION 4. DEVELOPMENT OF RESOURCES OF THE AREA

### Article 150 Policies relating to activities in the Area

Activities in the Area shall, as specifically provided in this Part, be carried out in such a manner as to foster healthy development of the world economy and balanced growth of international trade, and to promote international co-operation for the over-all development of all countries, especially the developing States and with a view to ensuring:

- (a) orderly and safe development and rational management of the resources of the Area, including the efficient conduct of activities in the Area and, in accordance with sound principles of conservation, the avoidance of unnecessary waste:
- (b) the expansion of opportunities for participation in such activities consistent particularly with articles 144 and 148;
- (c) participation in revenues by the Authority and the transfer of technology to the Enterprise and developing States as provided for in this Convention;
- (d) the increase in the availability of the minerals produced from the resources of the Area as needed in conjunction with minerals produced from other sources, to ensure supplies to consumers of such minerals;
- (e) the promotion of just and stable prices remunerative to producers and fair to consumers for minerals produced both from the resources of the Area and from other sources, and promoting long term equilibrium between supply and demand;
- (f) the enhancing of opportunities for all States Parties, irrespective of their social and economic systems or geographical location, to participate in the development of the resources of the Area and preventing monopolization of activities in the Area;
- (g) the protection of developing countries from adverse effects on their economies or on their export earnings resulting from a reduction in the price of an affected mineral, or in the volume of that mineral exported, to the extent that such reductions are caused by activities in the Area, as provided in article 151;
- (h) the development of the common heritage for the benefit of mankind as a whole; and
- (i) conditions of access to markets for the imports of minerals produced from the resources of the Area and for imports of commodities produced from such minerals shall not be more favourable than the most favourable applied to imports from other sources.

### Article 151 Production policies

- Without prejudice to the objectives set forth in article 150 and for the purpose of implementing the provisions of article 150, subparagraph (g), the Authority. acting through existing forums or such new arrangements or agreements as may be appropriate, in which all interested parties, including both producers and consumers, participate, shall take measures necessary to promote the growth, efficiency and stability of markets for those commodities produced from the resources of the Area, at prices remunerative to producers and fair to consumers. All States Parties shall co-operate to this end. The Authority shall have the right to participate in any commodity conference dealing with those commodities and in which all interested parties including both producers and consumers participate. The Authority shall have the right to become a party to any such arrangement or agreement resulting from such conferences as are referred to above. The participation by the Authority in any organs established under the arrangements or agreements referred to above shall be in respect of production in the Area and in accordance with the rules of procedure established for such organs. The Authority shall carry out its obligations under such arrangements or agreements in a manner which assures a uniform and non-discriminatory implementation in respect of all production in the Area of the minerals concerned. In doing so, the Authority shall act in a manner consistent with the terms of existing contracts and approved plans of work of the Enterprise.
- During an interim period specified in subparagraph (a), commercial production shall not be undertaken pursuant to an approved plan of work until an operator has applied for and has been issued a production authorization from the Authority during a period beginning not more than five years prior to the planned commencement of commercial production under that plan of work unless the Authority prescribes another period in its rules and regulations having regard to the nature and timing of project development. In this connexion, the Authority shall adopt appropriate performance requirements in accordance with article 17 of annex III. In his application for the authorization, the operator shall specify the annual quantity of nickel expected to be recovered under the approved plan of work. The application shall include a schedule of expenditures to be undertaken subsequent to receiving an authorization by the operator reasonably calculated to allow him to begin commercial production on the date planned. The Authority shall issue a production authorization for the level of production applied for unless the sum of that level and the levels already authorized exceeds the nickel production ceiling, as calculated pursuant to subparagraph (b) in the year of issuance of the authorization, during any year of planned production falling within the interim period. When issued, the production authorization and approved application shall become a part of the approved plan of work.
- (a) The interim period shall begin five years prior to 1 January of the year in which the earliest commercial production is planned to commence under an approved plan of work. In the event that the earliest commercial production is delayed beyond the year originally planned, the beginning of the interim period and the production ceiling originally calculated shall be adjusted accordingly. The interim period shall last 25 years or until the end of the Review Conference referred to in article 155 or until the day when such new arrangements or agreements as are referred to in paragraph 1 enter into force, whichever is earliest. The Authority shall resume the power provided in this paragraph for the remainder of the interim period if the said arrangements or agreements should lapse or become ineffective for any reason whatsoever;

- (b) The production ceiling for any year of the interim period beginning with the year of the earliest commercial production shall be the sum of (i) and (ii) below:
  - (i) The difference between the trend line values for annual nickel consumption, as calculated pursuant to this subparagraph, for the year immediately prior to the year of the earliest commercial production and the year immediately prior to the commencement of the interim period; plus
  - (ii) Sixty per cent of the difference between the trend line values for nickel consumption, as calculated pursuant to this subparagraph, for the year for which the production authorization is being applied for and the year immediately prior to the year of the earliest commercial production;
  - (iii) Trend line values used for computing the nickel production ceiling pursuant to this subparagraph shall be those annual nickel consumption values on a trend line computed during the year in which a production authorization is issued. The trend line shall be derived from a linear regression of the logarithms of actual nickel consumption for the most recent 15-year period for which such data are available, time being the independent variable. This trend line shall be referred to as the original trend line.
  - (iv) If the annual rate of increase of the original trend line is less than 3 per cent, then the trend line used to determine the quantities referred to in (i) and (ii) shall instead be one passing through the original trend line at the value for the first year of the relevant 15-year period, and increasing at 3 per cent annually. Provided however that the production ceiling established for any year of the interim period may not in any case exceed the difference between the original trend line value for that year and the original trend line value for the year immediately prior to the commencement of the interim period.
- (c) The Authority shall reserve for production by the Enterprise for its initial use a quantity of 38,000 tons of nickel from the available production ceiling calculated pursuant to subparagraph (b);
- (d) If, pursuant to subparagraph (b), the operator's application for an authorization is denied, the operator may reapply to the Authority at any time;
- (e) An operator may in any year produce less than or up to 8 per cent more than that level of annual production of minerals from nodules specified in his production authorization, provided that the over-all amount of production shall not exceed that specified in the authorization. Any increase over 8 per cent and up to 20 per cent in any year or any increase in the third and subsequent years following two consecutive years in which increases occur shall be negotiated with the Authority, which may require the operator to obtain a supplementary production authorization to cover additional production. Applications for such supplementary production shall be taken up by the Authority only after all pending applications by operators who have not yet received production authorizations have been acted upon and due account has been taken of other likely applicants. The Authority shall be guided by the principle of not exceeding the total production allowed under the production limitation in any year of the interim period. It shall not authorize the production under any plan of work, of a quantity in excess of 46,500 tons of nickel per year.

- (f) The levels of production of other metals such as copper, cobalt and manganese extracted from the nodules that are recovered pursuant to a production authorization should not be higher than those which would have been produced had the operator produced the maximum level of nickel from those nodules pursuant to this paragraph. The Authority shall establish rules and regulations pursuant to article 17 of annex III to implement the provisions of this subparagraph.
- 3. The Authority shall have the power to limit the level of production of minerals from the Area, other than minerals from nodules, under such conditions and applying such methods as may be appropriate. Regulations adopted by the Authority pursuant to this provision will be subject to the procedure set forth in article .... (entry into force of amendments to this Convention).
- 4. Following recommendations from the Council on the basis of advice from the Economic Planning Commission, the Assembly shall establish a system of compensation or other measures of economic adjustment assistance including co-operation with specialized agencies and other international organizations to assist developing countries which suffer serious adverse effects on their export earnings or economies resulting from a reduction in the price of an affected mineral or the volume of mineral exported, to the extent that such reduction is caused by activities in the Area. The Authority on request shall initiate studies on the problems of those States which are likely to be most seriously affected with a view to minimizing their difficulties and assisting them in their economic adjustment.

### Article 152 Exercise of power by the Authority

- 1. The Authority shall avoid discrimination in the exercise of its powers and functions, including the granting of opportunities for activities in the Area.
- 2. Nevertheless, special consideration for developing States, including particular consideration for the land-locked and geographically disadvantaged among them, specifically provided for in this Part shall be permitted.

### Article 153 System of exploration and exploitation

- l. Activities in the Area shall be organized, carried out and controlled by the Authority on behalf of mankind as a whole in accordance with the provisions of this article as well as other relevant provisions of this Part and the relevant annexes, and the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.
  - 2. Activities in the Area shall be carried out as prescribed in paragraph 3:
  - (a) by the Enterprise, and
- (b) in association with the Authority by States Parties or States Entities, or natural or juridical persons which possess the nationality of States Parties or are effectively controlled by them or their nationals, when sponsored by such States, or any group of the foregoing which meets the requirements provided in this Part including annex III.

- 3. Activities in the Area shall be carried out in accordance with a formal written plan of work drawn up in accordance with annex III and approved by the Council after review by the Legal and Technical Commission. In the case of activities in the Area carried out as authorized by the Authority by the entities specified in paragraph 2 (b), such a plan of work shall, in accordance with article 3 of annex III, be in the form of a contract. Such contracts may provide for joint arrangements in accordance with article 11 of annex III.
- 4. The Authority shall exercise such control over activities in the Area as is necessary for the purpose of securing compliance with the relevant provisions of this Part and the annexes relating thereto, and the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, and the plans of work approved in accordance with paragraph 3. States Parties shall assist the Authority by taking all measures necessary to ensure such compliance in accordance with article 139.
- 5. The Authority shall have the right to take at any time any measures provided for under this Part to ensure compliance with its terms, and the performance of the functions of control and regulation assigned to it thereunder or under any contract. The Authority shall have the right to inspect all installations in the Area used in connexion with activities in the Area.
- 6. A contract under paragraph 3 shall provide for security of tenure. Accordingly, it shall not be revised, suspended or terminated except in accordance with articles 18 and 19 of annex III.

### Article 154 Periodic review

Every five years from the entry into force of this Convention, the Assembly shall undertake a general and systematic review of the manner in which the international régime of the Area established in this Convention has operated in practice. In the light of the said review the Assembly may adopt, or recommend that other organs adopt, measures in accordance with the provisions and procedures of this Part and the annexes relating thereto which will lead to the improvement of the operation of the régime.

### Article 155 The Review Conference

Fifteen years from 1 January of the year in which the earliest commercial production commences under an approved plan of work, the Assembly shall convene a conference for the review of those provisions of this Part and the relevant annexes which govern the system of exploration and exploitation of the resources of the Area. The Conference shall consider in detail, in the light of the experience acquired during that period, whether the provisions of this Part governing the system of exploration and exploitation of the resources of the Area have achieved their aims in all respects, including whether they have benefited mankind as a whole; whether, during the 15-year period, reserved areas have been exploited in an effective and balanced way in comparison with non-reserved areas; whether the development and use of the Area and its resources have been undertaken in such a manner as to foster healthy development of the world economy and balanced growth of international trade; whether monopolization of activities in the Area has been prevented; whether the policies set forth in articles 150 and 151 have been fulfilled; and whether the system has resulted in the equitable sharing of benefits to be derived from activities in the Area, taking into particular consideration the interests and needs of the developing States.

- 2. The Conference shall ensure that the principles of the common heritage of mankind, the international régime designed to ensure its equitable exploitation for the benefit of all countries, especially the developing States and an Authority to conduct, organize and control activities in the Area are maintained. It shall also ensure the maintenance of the principles laid down in this Part with regard to the exclusion of claims or exercise of sovereignty over any part of the Area, the rights of States and their general conduct in relation to the Area, and their participation in exploration and exploitation of its resources in conformity with this Convention, the prevention of monopolization of activities in the Area, the use of the Area exclusively for peaceful purposes, economic aspects of activities in the Area, scientific research, transfer of technology, protection of the marine environment, and of human life, rights of coastal States, the legal status of the superjacent waters and air space and accommodation between activities in the Area and other activities in the marine environment.
  - 3. The Conference shall establish its own rules of procedure.
- 4. Five years after the commencement of the Review Conference, if agreement has not been reached on the system of exploration and exploitation of the resources of the Area, the Conference may decide during the ensuing twelve months, by a two-thirds majority of the States Parties, to adopt and submit to the States Parties for ratification, accession, or acceptance such amendments changing or modifying the system as it determines necessary and appropriate. Such amendments shall enter into force for all States Parties twelve months after the date of deposit of the instruments of ratification, accession, or acceptance by two-thirds of the States Parties.
- 5. Amendments adopted by the Conference under the provisions of this article shall not affect rights acquired under existing contracts.

#### SECTION 5. THE AUTHORITY

### SUBSECTION A. GENERAL

### Article 156 Establishment of the Authority

- 1. There is hereby established the International Sea-Bed Authority which shall function in accordance with the provisions of this Part.
  - 2. All States Parties are ipso facto members of the Authority.
  - 3. The seat of the Authority shall be at Jamaica. 3/
- 4. The Authority may establish such regional centres or offices as it deems necessary for the performance of its functions.

### Article 157 Nature and fundamental principles of the Authority

- 1. The Authority is the organization through which States Parties shall organize and control activities in the Area, particularly with a view to administering the resources of the Area, in accordance with this Part.
- 2. The powers and functions of the Authority shall be those expressly conferred upon it by the relevant provisions of this Convention. The Authority shall have such incidental powers, consistent with the provisions of this Convention, as are implicit in and necessary for the performance of these powers and functions with respect to activities in the Area.
- 3. The Authority is based on the principle of the sovereign equality of all of its members.
- 4. All members, in order to ensure to all of them the rights and benefits resulting from nembership, shall fulfil in good faith the obligations assumed by them in accordance with this Part.

## Article 158 Organs of the Authority

- 1. There are hereby established as the principal organs of the Authority, an Assembly, a Council and a Secretariat.
- 2. There is hereby established the Enterprise, the organ through which the Authority shall carry out the functions referred to in article 170, paragraph 1.
- 3. Such subsidiary organs as may be found necessary may be established in accordance with this Part.
- 4. The principal organs and the Enterprise shall each be responsible for exercising those powers and functions which have been conferred upon them. In exercising such powers and functions each organ shall avoid taking any action which may derogate from or impede the exercise of specific powers and functions conferred upon another organ.

<sup>3/</sup> The Conference decided that at an appropriate time the Conference will be given an opportunity to express its preference among the candidatures of Janaica, Malta and Fiji by means of a vote unless the Conference decides otherwise.

#### SUBSECTION B. THE ASSEMBLY

### Article 159 Composition, procedure and voting

- 1. The Assembly shall consist of all the members of the Authority.
- 2. The Assembly shall meet in regular session every year and in such special sessions as may be determined by the Assembly, or convened by the Secretary-General at the request of the Council or of a majority of the members of the Assembly.
- 3. Sessions shall take place at the seat of the Authority unless otherwise determined by the Assembly. At such sessions, each member shall have one representative who may be accompanied by alternates and advisers.
- 4. The Assembly shall adopt its own rules of procedure. It shall elect its President and such other officers as may be required, at the beginning of each regular session. They shall hold office until the new President and other officers are elected at the next regular session.
  - 5. Each member of the Assembly shall have one vote.
- 6. All decisions on questions of substance shall be taken by a two-thirds majority of the members present and voting, provided that such majority includes at least a majority of the members participating in that session of the Assembly. When the issue arises as to whether the question is one of substance or not, the question shall be treated as one of substance unless otherwise decided by the Assembly by the majority required for questions of substance.
- 7. Decisions on questions of procedure, including the decision to convene a special session of the Assembly, shall be made by a majority of the representatives present and voting.
- 8. When a matter of substance comes up for voting for the first time, the President may, and shall, if requested by at least one fifth of the members of the Assembly, defer the question of taking a vote on such matter for a period not exceeding five calendar days. This rule may be applied only once on the matter, and shall not be applied so as to defer questions beyond the end of the session.
  - 9. A majority of the members of the Assembly shall constitute a quorum.
- 10. Upon request in writing to the President sponsored by not less than one quarter of the members of the Authority for an advisory opinion on the conformity with this Convention of a proposed action before the Assembly on any matter, the Assembly shall defer its vote on that matter and shall request the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber for an advisory opinion thereon. Voting on that action shall be deferred pending delivery of the advisory opinion by the Chamber. If the advisory opinion is not received by the final week of the session in which it is requested, the Assembly shall decide when it will meet to vote upon the deferred matter.

### Article 160 Powers and functions

- l. The Assembly, as the sole organ of the Authority consisting of all the members, shall be considered the supreme organ of the Authority to which the other principal organs shall be accountable as specifically provided for in this Convention. The Assembly shall have the power to establish general policies in conformity with the relevant provisions of this Convention on any question or matter within the competence of the Authority.
  - 2. In addition, the powers and functions of the Assembly shall be:
  - (a) Election of the members of the Council in accordance with article 161;
- (b) Election of the Secretary-General from among the candidates proposed by the Council;
- (c) Election, upon the recommendation of the Council, of the members of the Governing Board of the Enterprise as well as the Director-General of the Enterprise;
- (d) Establishment, as appropriate, of such subsidiary organs as may be found necessary for the performance of its functions in accordance with the provisions of this Part. In the composition of such subsidiary organs due account shall be taken of the principle of equitable geographical distribution and of special interests and the need for members qualified and competent in the relevant technical questions dealt with by such organs;
- (e) Assessment of the contributions of members to the administrative budget of the Authority in accordance with an agreed general assessment scale based upon the scale used for the regular budget of the United Nations until the Authority shall have sufficient income from other sources for meeting its administrative expenses;
  - (f) (i) Consideration and approval, upon the recommendation of the Council, of the rules, regulations and procedures on the equitable sharing of financial and other economic benefits derived from activities in the Area and the payments and contributions made pursuant to article 82, taking into particular consideration the interests and the needs of the developing States and peoples who have not attained full independence or other self-governing status. If the Assembly does not approve the recommendations of the Council, the Assembly shall return them to the Council for reconsideration in the light of the views expressed by the Assembly;
    - (ii) Consideration and approval of the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, and any amendments thereto, provisionally adopted by the Council pursuant to article 162, paragraph 2 (n). These rules, regulations and procedures shall relate to prospecting, exploration, and exploitation in the Area, the financial management and internal administration of the Authority, and, upon the recommendation of the Governing Board of the Enterprise, the rules, regulations and procedures for the transfer of funds from the Enterprise to the Authority;

- (g) Consideration and approval of the budget of the Authority on its submission by the Council;
- (h) Examination of periodic reports from the Council and from the Enterprise and of special reports requested from the Council and from any other organs of the Authority;
- (i) Initiation of studies and recommendations for the purpose of promoting international co-operation concerning activities in the Area and encouraging the progressive development of international law relating thereto and its codification;
- (j) Deciding upon the equitable sharing of financial and other economic benefits derived from activities in the Area, consistent with the provisions of this Convention and the rules, regulations and procedures of the Λuthority;
- (k) Consideration of problems of a general nature in connexion with activities in the Area in particular for developing States, as well as of such problems for States in connexion with activities in the Area as are due to their geographical location, including land-locked and geographically disadvantaged countries;
- (1) Establishment, upon the recommendation of the Council on the basis of advice from the Economic Planning Commission of a system of compensation as provided in article 151, paragraph 4;
  - (m) Suspension of members pursuant to article 185;
- (n) Discussion of any question or matter within the competence of the Authority nd decisions as to which organ shall deal with any such question or matter not pecifically entrusted to a particular organ of the Authority, consistent with the distribution of powers and functions among the organs of the Authority.

### SUBSECTION C. THE COUNCIL

## Article 161 Composition, procedure and voting

- 1. The Council shall consist of 36 members of the Authority elected by the Assembly, the election to take place in the following order:
- (a) Four members from among the eight States Parties which have the largest investments in preparation for and in the conduct of activities in the Area, either directly or through their nationals, including at least one State from the Eastern (Socialist) European region;
- (b) Four members from among those States Parties which, during the last five years for which statistics are available, have either consumed more than two per cent of total world consumption or have had net imports of more than two per cent of total world imports of the commodities produced from the categories of minerals to be derived from the Area, and in any case one State from the Eastern (Socialist) European region;
- (c) Four members from among countries which on the basis of production in areas under their jurisdiction are major net exporters of the categories of minerals to be derived from the Area, including at least two developing countries whose exports of such minerals have a substantial bearing upon their economies;
- (d) Six members from among developing States, representing special interests The special interests to be represented shall include those of States with large populations, States which are land-locked or geographically disadvantaged, States which are major importers of the categories of minerals to be derived from the Area, States which are potential producers of such minerals, and least developed States;
- (e) Eighteen members elected according to the principle of ensuring an equitable geographical distribution of seats in the Council as a whole, provided that each geographical region shall have at least one member elected under this subparagraph. For this purpose the geographical regions shall be Africa, Asia, Eastern Europe (Socialist), Latin America and Western Europe and others.
- 2. In electing the members of the Council in accordance with paragraph 1, the Assembly shall ensure that:
- (a) Land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States are represented to a degree which is reasonably proportionate to their representation in the Assembly;
- (b) Coastal States, especially developing States, which do not qualify under paragraph 1 (a), (b), (c) and (d) are represented to a degree which is reasonably proportionate to their representation in the Assembly:
- (c) Each group of States Parties to be represented on the Council is represented by those members, if any, which are nominated by the group.

- 3. Elections shall take place at regular sessions of the Assembly, and each member of the Council shall be elected for a term of four years. In the first election of members of the Council, however, one half of the members of each category shall be chosen for a period of two years.
- 4. Members shall be eligible for re-election; but due regard should be paid to the desirability of rotating seats.
- 5. The Council shall function at the seat of the Authority, and shall meet as often as the business of the Authority may require, but not less than three times a year.
  - 6. Each member of the Council shall have one vote.
- 7. (a) Decisions on questions of procedure shall be taken by a majority of the members present and voting;
- (b) Decisions on questions of substance arising under the following provisions shall be taken by a two-thirds majority of the members present and voting, provided that such majority includes a majority of the members of the Council: article 162, paragraph 2(f); article 162, paragraph 2(g); article 162, paragraph 2(h); article 162, paragraph 2(i); article 162, paragraph 2(m); article 162, paragraph 2(u); article 189;
- (c) Decisions on questions of substance arising under the following provisions shall be taken by a three-fourths majority of the members present and voting, provided that such majority includes a majority of the members of the Council; article 162, paragraph 1; article 162, paragraph 2(a); article 162, paragraph 2(b); article 162, paragraph 2(c); article 162, paragraph 2(d); article 162, paragraph 2(e); article 162, paragraph 2(k); article 162, paragraph 2(p); article 162, paragraph 2(q); article 162, paragraph 2(r); article 162, paragraph 2(s); article 162, paragraph 2(v) provided that orders issued under this subparagraph may be binding for no more than 30 days unless confirmed by a decision taken in accordance with subparagraph (d); article 162, paragraph 2(w); article 162, paragraph 2(x); article 162, paragraph 2(y); article 163, paragraph 2; article 174, paragraph 3; article 11 of annex IV;
- (d) Decisions on questions of substance arising under the following provisions shall be decided by consensus: article 162, paragraph 2(1); article 162, paragraph 2(n); adoption of amendments to Part XI;
- (e) For the rurpose of subparagraph (d), the term "consensus" means the absence of any formal objection. Within 14 days of the submission of a proposal to the Council the President shall ascertain whether there would be an objection to the proposal if it were put to the Council for adoption. If the President of the Council ascertains that there would be an objection to a proposal before the Council, he shall constitute a Conciliation Committee consisting of not more than nine members, with himself as Chairman, for the purpose of reconciling the differences and producing a proposal which can be adopted by consensus. The President shall establish the said committee within three days following such ascertainment. The Conciliation Committee shall work expeditiously and report to the Council within 14 days. If the Conciliation Committee is unable to recommend a proposal which can be adopted by consensus it shall in its report, set out the grounds on which a proposal is being opposed;

- (f) Decisions not listed above which the Council is authorized to take by the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority or otherwise shall be taken pursuant to the subparagraphs of this article specified in the rules, regulations and procedures or, if not specified therein, then pursuant to the subparagraph determined by the Council if possible in advance, by the majority required for questions under subparagraph (d);
- (g) When the issue arises as to whether a question is within subparagraphs (a), (b), (c) or (d), the question shall be treated as being within the subparagraph requiring the higher or highest majority as the case may be, unless otherwise decided by the Council by the said majority.
  - 8. A majority of the members of the Council shall constitute a quorum.
- 9. The Council shall establish a procedure whereby a member of the Authority not represented on the Council may send a representative to attend a meeting of the Council when a request is made by such member, or a matter particularly affecting it is under consideration. Such a representative shall be entitled to participate in the deliberations but not to vote.

## Article 162 Powers and functions

- 1. The Council is the executive organ of the Authority, having the power to establish in conformity with the provisions of this Convention and the general policies established by the Assembly, the specific policies to be pursued by the Authority on any questions or matters within the competence of the Authority.
  - 2. In addition, the Council shall:
- (a) Supervise and co-ordinate the implementation of the provisions of this Part on all questions and matters within the competence of the Authority and invite the attention of the Assembly to cases of non-compliance;
- (b) Propose to the Assembly a list of candidates for the election of the Secretary-General;
- (c) Recommend to the Assembly candidates for election as members of the Governing Board of the Enterprise as well as the Director-General of the Enterprise;
- (d) Establish, as appropriate, and with due regard to economy and efficiency, in addition to the Commissions provided for in article 163, paragraph 1, such subsidiary organs as may be found necessary for the performance of its functions in accordance with the provisions of this Part. In the composition of such subsidiary organs, emphasis shall be placed on the need for members qualified and competent in the relevant technical matters dealt with by such organs provided that due account shall be taken of the principle of equitable geographical distribution and of special interests;
  - (e) Adopt its rules of procedure including the method of selecting its president;
- (f) Enter into agreements with the United Nations or other international organizations on behalf of the Authority and within its competence, subject to approval by the Assembly;

- (g) Examine the reports of the Enterprise and transmit them to the Assembly with its recommendations;
- (h) Present to the Assembly annual reports and such special reports as the Assembly may require;
  - (i) Issue directives to the Enterprise in accordance with article 170;
- (j) Approve plans of work in accordance with article 6 of annex III. The Council shall act upon each plan of work within 60 days of its submission by the Legal and Technical Commission at a session of the Council in accordance with the following procedures:
  - (i) If the Commission recommends the approval of a plan of work, it shall be deemed to have been approved by the Council if no Council member submits to the President within 14 days a specific written objection alleging non-compliance with the requirements of article 6 of annex III. In the event that there is an objection, the conciliation procedure contained in article 161, paragraph 7(e), shall apply. If, at the end of the conciliation process, the objection to the approval of the plan of work is still maintained, the plan of work shall be deemed to have been approved by the Council unless the Council disapproves it by consensus among its members excluding the State or States, if any, making the application or sponsoring the applicant;
  - (ii) If the Commission recommends the disapproval of a plan of work or does not make a recommendation, the Council may decide to approve the plan of work by a three-fourths majority of the members present and voting, provided that such majority includes a majority of members participating in that session;
- (k) Exercise control over activities in the Area in accordance with article 153, paragraph 4, and the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority;
- (1) Adoption of the recommendation of the Economic Planning Commission necessary and appropriate measures in accordance with article 150, subparagraph (g), to protect against adverse economic effects specified therein;
- (m) Make recommendations to the Assembly on the basis of advice from the Economic Planning Commission for a system of compensation or other measures of economic adjustment assistance as provided in article 151, paragraph 4;
  - (n) (i) Recommend to the Assembly rules, regulations and procedures on the equitable sharing of financial and other economic benefits derived from activities in the Area and the payments and contributions made pursuant to article 82, taking into particular consideration the interests and needs of the developing States and peoples who have not attained full independence or other self-governing status;

- (ii) Adopt and supply provisionally, pending approval by the Assembly, the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, and any amendments thereto, taking into account the recommendations of the Commission or other subordinate organ concerned. These rules, regulations and procedures shall relate to prospecting, exploration and exploitation in the Area, the financial management and internal administration of the Authority. Such rules, regulations and procedures shall remain in effect on a provisional basis until approval by the Assembly or by the Council in the light of any views expressed by the Assembly.
- (o) Review the collection of all payments to be made by or to the Authority in connexion with operations pursuant to this Part;
- (p) Make the selection among applicants for production authorization pursuant to article 7 of annex III for the production authorization referred to in article 151, where such selection is required by those provisions;
  - (q) Submit the budget of the Authority to the Assembly for its approval;
- (r) Make recommendations to the Assembly concerning policies on any question or matter within the competence of the Authority;
- (s) Make recommendations to the Assembly concerning suspension of the privileges and rights of membership for gross and persistent violations of the provisions of this Part upon a finding of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber;
- (t) Initiate on behalf of the Authority proceedings before the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber in cases of non-compliance;
- (u) Upon a finding by the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber on proceedings resulting from subparagraph (t), notify the Assembly and make recommendations with respect to measures to be taken unless otherwise decided;
- (v) Issue emergency orders, which may include orders for the suspension or adjustment of operations, to prevent serious harm to the marine environment arising out of any activity in the Area;
- (w) Disapprove areas for exploitation by contractors or the Enterprise in cases where substantial evidence indicates the risk of serious harm to the marine environment;
- (x) Establish a subsidiary organ for the elaboration of draft financial rules, regulations and procedures relating to:
  - (i) financial management in accordance with articles 171 to 175; and
  - (ii) financial arrangements in accordance with article 13 and article 17, paragraph 1(c), of annex II.
- (y) Establish appropriate mechanisms for directing and supervising a staff of inspectors who shall inspect activities in the Area to determine whether the provisions of this Part, the rules, regulations and procedures prescribed thereunder, and the terms and conditions of any contract with the Authority are being complied with.

### Article 163 Organs of the Council

- 1. There are hereby established the following organs of the Council:
- (a) Legal and Technical Commission;
- (b) Economic Planning Commission.
- 2. Each Commission shall be composed of 15 members elected by the Council upon nomination by the States Parties. The Council may, however, if necessary, decide to increase the size of any Commission with due regard to economy and efficiency.
- 3. Members of the Commissions shall have appropriate qualifications in the area of competence of the Commission in which they seek election.

In submitting names of candidates for election to the Commission, States Parties shall bear in mind the need to submit candidates of the highest standard of competence and integrity with qualifications in relevant fields so as to ensure the effective functioning of the Commissions.

- 4. In the election of members of the Commissions, due regard shall be paid to the need for equitable geographical distribution and representation of special interests.
- 5. No State may nominate more than one person as a candidate to serve in the same Commission. No person shall be elected to serve in more than one Commission.
- 6. In the event of the death, incapacity or resignation of a member of a Commission prior to the expiry of his term of office, the Council shall appoint a member from the same geographical region or area of interest who shall hold office for the remainder of the term of the previous members.
- 7. Members of a Commission shall hold office for a term of five years. They shall be eligible for re-election for a further term.
- 8. Members of Commissions shall have no financial interest whatsoever in any activity relating to exploration and exploitation in the Area. Subject to their responsibilities to the Commissions upon which they serve, they shall not disclose, even after the termination of their functions, any industrial secret or data which is proprietary in accordance with article 14 of annex III, or other confidential information coming to their knowledge by reason of their duties for the Authority.
- 9. Each Commission shall perform its functions in accordance with such guidelines and directives as the Council may adopt.
- 10. Each Commission shall formulate and submit to the Council for approval such rules and regulations as may be necessary for the efficient conduct of the Commission's functions.
- 11. The decision-making procedures of the Commissions shall be established by the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority. Recommendations to the Council shall, where necessary, be accompanied by a summary on the divergencies of opinion in the Commission.

- 12. Each Commission shall normally function at the seat of the Authority and shall meet as often as shall be required for the efficient performace of its functions.
- 13. In the performance of these functions, each Commission may, where appropriate, consult another commission or any competent organ of the United Nations and its specialized agencies, or any international organizations with relevant competence in the subject-matter of such consultation.

### Article 164 Economic Planning Commission

- 1. Members of the Economic Planning Commission shall have appropriate qualifications such as those relevant to mining, management of mineral resource activities, international trade or economics. The Council shall endeavour to ensure that the membership fulfils the need for all appropriate qualifications in the Commission as a whole.
  - 2. The Commission shall:
- (a) Upon the request of the Council, propose measures to implement decisions relating to activities in the Area taken in accordance with this Convention;
- (b) Review the trends of and factors affecting supply, demand and prices of raw materials which may be obtained from the Area, bearing in mind the interests of both importing and exporting countries, and in particular the developing States among them;
- (c) Examine any situation likely to lead to such adverse effects as referred to in article 150, subparagraph (g), brought to its attention by the State Party or States Parties concerned, and make appropriate recommendations to the Council;
- (d) Propose to the Council for submission to the Assembly a system of compensation for developing States which suffer adverse effects caused by activities in the Area, as provided in article 151, paragraph 4. After adoption by the Assembly of such system of compensation, the Economic Planning Commission shall make such recommendations to the Council as are necessary for the application of the system in concrete cases.

## Article 165 The Legal and Technical Commission

- 1. Members of the Legal and Technical Commission shall have appropriate qualifications such as those relevant to exploration, exploitation and processing of mineral resources; oceanology; protection of the marine environment or economic or legal matters relating to ocean mining and other relevant fields of expertise. The Council shall endeavour to ensure that the membership fulfils the need for all appropriate qualifications in the Commission as a whole.
  - 2. The Commission shall:
- (a) Upon the request of the Council make recommendations with regard to the carrying out of the Authority's functions;
- (b) Review formal written plans of work for activities in the Area in accordance with article 153, paragraph 3, and submit appropriate recommendations to the Council. The Commission shall base its recommendations solely on the grounds stated in annex III and shall report fully thereon to the Council;

- (c) Upon the request of the Council, supervise activities in the Area, where appropriate, in consultation and collaboration with any entity carrying out such activities or State or States concerned and report to the Council;
- (d) Prepare assessments of the environmental implications of activities in the Area;
- (e) Make recommendations to the Council on the protection of the marine environment. taking into account the views of recognized experts in that field;
- (f) Formulate and submit to the Council the rules, regulations and procedures referred to in article 162, paragraph 2(n), taking into account all relevant factors including assessments of the environmental implications of activities in the Area:
- (g) Keep such rules, regulations and procedures under review and recommend to the Council from time to time such amendments thereto as it may deem necessary or desirable;
- (h) Make recommendations to the Council regarding the establishment of a monitoring programme which shall observe, measure, evaluate and analyse by recognized scientific methods on a regular basis the risks and effects of activities in the Area with respect to pollution of the marine environment, ensure that existing regulations are adequate and complied with and co-ordinate the implementation of the monitoring programme approved by the Council;
- (i) Recommend to the Council that proceedings be initiated on behalf of the Authority before the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber, in accordance with this Part and the relevant annexes as provided in article 187;
- (j) Upon a finding by the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber on proceedings resulting from subparagraph (i), make recommendations to the Council with respect to measures to be taken;
- (k) Make recommendations to the Council to issue emergency orders, which may include orders for the suspension or adjustment of operations to prevent serious harm to the marine environment arising out of activities in the Area. Such recommendations shall be taken up by the Council on a priority basis;
- (1) Make recommendations to the Council to disapprove areas for exploitation by contractors or the Enterprise in cases where substantial evidence indicates the risk of serious harm to the marine environment;
- (m) Make recommendations to the Council regarding the direction and supervision of a staff of inspectors who shall inspect activities in the Area to determine whether the provisions of this Part, the rules, regulations and procedures prescribed thereunder, and the terms and conditions of any contract with the Authority are being complied with;
- (n) Calculate the production ceiling and issue production authorizations on behalf of the Authority pursuant to article 151, following any necessary selection among applicants for production authorizations by the Council in accordance with article 7 of annex III.
- 3. The members of the Commission shall, upon request by any State Party or other party concerned, be accompanied by a representative of such State Party or other party concerned when carrying out their function of supervision and inspection.

#### SUBSECTION D. THE SECRETARIAN

### Article 166 The Secretary-General

- 1. The Secretariat shall comprise a Secretary-General and such staff as the Authority may require. The Secretary-General shall be elected by the Assembly upon the recommendation of the Council for a four-year term and shall be eligible for re-election. He shall be the chief administrative officer of the Authority.
- 2. The Secretary-General shall act in that capacity in all meetings of the Assembly and of the Council, and of any subsidiary organs, and shall perform such other administrative functions as are entrusted to him by any such organs of the Authority.
- 3. The Secretary-General shall make an annual report to the Assembly on the work of the Authority.

## Article 167 The staff of the Authority

- 1. The staff of the Authority shall consist of such qualified scientific and technical and other personnel as may be required to fulfil the administrative functions of the Authority.
- 2. The paramount consideration in the recruitment and employment of the staff and in the determination of their conditions of service shall be to secure employees of the highest standards of efficiency, competence and integrity. Subject to this consideration, due regard shall be paid to the importance of recruiting the staff on as wide a geographical basis as possible.
- 3. The staff shall be appointed by the Secretary-General. The terms and conditions on which the staff shall be appointed, remunerated and dismissed shall be in accordance with the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.

### Article 168 International character and responsibilities of the Secretariat

- l. In the performance of their duties, the Secretary-General and the staff shall not seek or receive instructions from any Government or from any other source external to the Authority. They shall refrain from any action which might reflect on their position as international officials of the Authority responsible only to the Authority. Each State Party undertakes to respect the exclusively international character of the responsibilities of the Secretary-General and the staff and not to seek to influence them in the discharge of their responsibilities. Any violation of responsibilities by a staff member shall be submitted to appropriate administrative tribunal as provided in the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.
- 2. The Secretary-General and the staff shall have no financial interest whatsoever in any activity relating to exploration and exploitation in the Area. Subject to their responsibilities to the Authority, they shall not disclose, even after the termination of their functions, any industrial secret or data which is proprietary in accordance with article 14 of annex III, or other confidential information of commercial value coming to their knowledge by reason of their official duties with or on behalf of the Authority.
- 3. Violations of the obligations of a staff member of the Authority set forth in paragraph 2 shall, on the request of a State Party affected by such violation, or a natural or juridical person, sponsored by a State Party as provided in

article 155, paragraph 2 (b), and affected by such violation, be submitted by the Authority against the staff member concerned to a tribunal designated by the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority. The Party affected shall have the right to take part in the proceedings. If the tribunal so recommends, the Secretary-General shall dismiss the staff member concerned.

4. The elaboration of the relevant provisions of this article shall be included in the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.

# Article 169 Consultation and co-operation with international and non-governmental organizations

- 1. The Secretary-General shall, on matters within the competence of the Authority, make suitable arrangements, with the approval of the Council, for consultation and co-operation with international and non-governmental organizations recognized by the Economic and Social Council of the United Mations.
- 2. Any organization with which the Secretary-General has entered into an arrangement under paragraph 1 may designate representatives to attend as observers meetings of the organs of the Authority in accordance with the rules of procedure of any such organ. Procedures shall be established for obtaining the views of such organizations in appropriate cases.
- 3. The Secretary-General may distribute to States Parties written reports submitted by these non-governmental organizations on subjects in which they have special competence and which are related to the work of the Authority.

### SUBSECTION E. THE ENTERPRISE

### Article 170 The Enterprise

- 1. The Enterprise shall be the organ of the Authority which shall carry out activities in the Area directly, pursuant to article 155, paragraph 2 (a), as well as transportation, processing and marketing of minerals recovered from the Area.
- 2. The Enterprise shall, within the framework of the international legal personality of the Authority, have such legal capacity as is provided for in the Statute set forth in annex IV. The Enterprise shall act in accordance with the provisions of this Convention and the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, as well as the general policies established by the Assembly, and shall by subject to the directives and control of the Council.
- 3. The Enterprise shall have its principal place of business at the seat of the Authority.
- 4. The Enterprise shall, in accordance with article 175, paragraph 2, and article 11 of annex IV, be provided with such funds as it may require to carry out its functions, and shall receive technology as provided in article 1/4 and other relevant provisions of this Convention.

### SUBSECTION F. FINANCIAL ADRAHGEMENTS OF THE AUTHORITY

### Article 171 Funds of the Authority

The funds of the Authority shall include:

(a) assessed contributions made by States Parties in accordance with article 160, paragraph 2 (e);

- (b) funds transferred from the Enterprise in accordance with article 10, paragraph 1, of annex IV;
- (c) receipts of the Authority arising from activities in the Area in accordance with article 13 of annex III;
  - (d) loans received in accordance with article 174; and
  - (e) voluntary contributions made by States Parties or other entities.

### Article 172 Annual budget of the Authority

The Secretary-General shall prepare and submit to the Council the annual budget estimates of the Authority. The Council shall consider and submit to the Assembly the budget estimates, together with any recommendations thereon. The Assembly shall consider and approve these budget estimates in accordance with article 160, paragraph 2 (g).

### Article 175 Expenses of the Authority

- l. The contributions of States Parties referred to in article 171, subparagraph (a), shall be paid into a special account to meet the administrative expenses of the Authority until the Authority shall have sufficient funds from other sources for meeting its administrative expenses.
- 2. The administrative expenses of the Authority shall be a first call upon the funds of the Authority. Apart from the funds referred to in article 171, sub-paragraph (a), the funds which remain after payment of administrative expenses may, inter alia:
- (a) be distributed in accordance with article 140 and article 160, paragraph 2 (j);
- (b) be used to provide the Enterprise with funds in accordance with article 170, paragraph 4, and article 11, paragraph 1 (a) of annex IV;
- (c) be used to compensate developing States in accordance with article 151, paragraph 4, and article 160, paragraph 2 (1).

## Article 174 Borrowing powers of the Authority

- 1. The Authority shall have the power to borrow funds.
- 2. The Assembly shall prescribe the limits on the borrowing power of the Authority in its financial regulations adopted pursuant to article 160, paragraph 2 (f).
  - 3. The Council shall exercise the borrowing power of the Authority.
  - 4. States Parties shall not be liable for the debts of the Authority.

### Article 175 Annual Audit

The records, books and accounts of the Authority, including its annual financial statements, shall be audited annually by an independent auditor to be appointed by the Assembly.

SUBSECTION G. TEGAL STATUS, PRIVILEGES AND IMMUNITIES

### Article 176 Legal status

The Authority shall have international legal personality and such legal capacity as may be necessary for the exercise of its functions and the fulfilment of its purpose.

## Article 177 Privileges and immunities

To enable the Authority to fulfil its functions, it shall enjoy in the territory of each State Party the privileges and immunities set forth in this subsection. The privileges and immunities relating to the Enterprise shall be those set forth in article 15 of annex IV.

## Article 170 Immunity from legal process

The Authority, its property and assets, shall enjoy immunity from legal process except to the extent that the Authority shall have expressly waived such immunity in a particular case.

## Article 179 Immunity from search and any form of seizure

The property and assets of the Authority, wheresoever located and by whomsoever held, shall be immune from search, requisition, confiscation, expropriation or any other form of seizure by executive or legislative action.

# Article 180 Property and assets free from restrictions, regulations, controls and moratoria

All property and assets of the Authority shall be free from restrictions, regulations, controls and moratoria of any nature.

## Article 181 Immunities of certain persons connected with the Authority

Representatives of member States attending meetings of the Assembly, the Council, or organs of the Assembly or the Council and the Secretary-General and staff of the Authority shall enjoy in the territory of each member State:

(a) Immunity from legal process with respect to acts performed by them in the exercise of their functions, except to the extent that the State which they represent or the Authority, as appropriate, shall have expressly vaived such immunity in a particular case;

(b) Not being local nationals, the same immunities from immigration restrictions, alien registration requirements and national service obligations, the same facilities as regards exchange restrictions and the same treatment in respect of travelling facilities as are accorded by States Parties to the representatives, officials and employees of comparable rank of other States Parties.

### Article 102 Inviolability of archives

- 1. The archives of the Authority shall be inviolable, wherever they may be.
- 2. All proprietary data, industrial secrets or similar information and all personnel records shall not be placed in archives open to public inspection.
- 3. With regard to its official communications, the Authority shall be accorded by each State Party treatment no less favourable than that accorded to other international organizations.

### Article 183 Immunities from taxation

- l. Within the scope of its official activities, the Authority, its assets, property, income and its operations and transactions authorized by this Convention shall be exempt from all direct taxation and from all customs duties on goods imported or exported for its official use. The Authority shall not claim exemption from taxes which are no more than charges for services rendered.
- 2. When purchases of goods or services of substantial value necessary for the official activities of the Authority are made by or on behalf of the Authority, and when the price of such purchases includes taxes or duties, appropriate measures shall, to the extent practicable, be taken by States Parties to grant exemption from such taxes or duties or provide for their reimbursement. Goods imported or purchased under an exemption provided for in this article shall not be sold or otherwise disposed of in the territory of the State Party which granted the exemption, except under conditions agreed with that State Party.
- 3. No tax shall be levied by States Parties on or in respect of salaries and emoluments paid or any other form of payment made by the Authority to the Secretary-General and staff of the Authority, as well as experts performing missions for the Authority, who are not their citizens, nationals or subjects.

### SUBSECTION H. SUSPENSION OF RIGHTS OF MEMBERS

## Article 184 Suspension of voting rights

A State Party which is in arrears in the payment of its financial contributions to the Authority shall have no vote in the Authority if the amount of its arrears equals or exceeds the amount of the contribution due from it for the preceding two years. The Assembly may permit such a member to vote if it is satisfied that the failure to pay is due to conditions beyond the control of the member.

## Article 185 Suspension of privileges and the rights of membership

- 1. A State Party which has grossly and persistently violated the provisions of this Part may be suspended from the exercise of the privileges and the rights of membership by the Assembly upon recommendation by the Council.
- 2. No action may be taken under this article until the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber has found that a State Party has grossly and persistently violated the provisions of this Part.

#### SECTION 6. SETTLEMENT OF DISPUTES AND ADVISORY OPINIONS

# Article 186 Establishment of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber of the International Tribural for the Law of the Sea

The establishment of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber and the manner in which it shall exercise its jurisdiction shall be governed by the provisions of this section, Part XV and annex VI.

### Jurisdiction of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber

The Chamber shall have jurisdiction under this Part and the annexes relating thereto, in the following categories of disputes with respect to activities in the Area:

- (a) Disputes between States Parties concerning the interpretation or application of this Part and the annexes relating thereto;
- (b) Disputes between a State Party and the Authority concerning acts or omissions of the Authority or of a State Party which are alleged to be in violation of this Part or the annexes relating thereto or of rules, regulations or procedures promulgated in accordance therewith, or acts of the Authority alleged to be in excess of jurisdiction or a misuse of power;
- (c) Disputes between parties to a contract, being States Parties, the Authority or the Enterprise, State entities and natural or juridical persons, as referred to in article 153, paragraph 2 (b), concerning:

- (i) the interpretation or application of a relevant contract or a plan of work;
- (ii) acts or omissions of a party to the contract relating to activities in the Area and directed to the other party or directly affecting its legitimate interests;
- (d) Disputes between the Authority and a prospective contractor who has been sponsored by a State as provided in article 153, paragraph 2 (b), and has duly fulfilled the conditions referred to in article 4, paragraph 6 and article 13, paragraph 2 of annex III, concerning the refusal of a contract, or a legal issue arising in the negotiation of the contract;
- (e) Disputes between the Authority and a State Party, a State entity or a natural or juridical person sponsored by a State Party as provided for in article 153, paragraph 2 (b), where it is alleged that the Authority has incurred liability as provided in article 22 of annex III.
- (f) Any dispute for which jurisdiction of the Chamber is specifically provided in this Part and the annexes relating thereto.

#### Article 188

# Submission of disputes to a special chamber of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea or an ad hoc chamber of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber or to binding arbitration

- 1. Disputes between States Parties referred to in article 187, subparagraph (a), may be submitted:
- (a) to a special chamber of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea to be established in accordance with articles 15 and 17 of annex VI, upon the request of the parties to the dispute; or
- (b) to an <u>ad hoc</u> chamber of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber to be established in accordance with article 37 of annex VI, upon the request of any party to the dispute.
- 2. (a) Disputes concerning the interpretation or application of a contract referred to in article 187, paragraph (c) (i), shall be submitted, at the request of any party to the dispute, to binding commercial arbitration, unless at any time the parties to the dispute otherwise agree or have agreed. A commercial arbitral tribunal, to which such dispute is submitted, shall have no jurisdiction to determine any question of interpretation of this Convention. When such a dispute also involves a question of the interpretation of Part XI and the annexes relating thereto, with respect to activities in the Area, such question shall be referred to the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber for a ruling.
- (b) If, at the commencement of or in the course of such arbitration, the arbitral tribunal determines, either at the request of any party to the dispute or proprio motu, that its decision depends upon a ruling of the Sea-Bed Disputes

Chamber, the arbitral tribunal shall refer such question to the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber for such ruling. The arbitral tribunal shall then proceed to render its award in conformity with the ruling of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber.

(c) Unless the parties to the dispute otherwise agree, in the absence of a provision in the contract on the arbitration procedure to be applied in such a dispute, the arbitration shall be conducted in accordance with the UNCITRAL rbitration Rules or other arbitration rules as may be prescribed in the rules, regulations and procedures adopted by the Authority.

### Article 189 Advisory opinions

The Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea shall give advisory opinions when requested to do so by the Assembly or the Council on legal questions arising within the scope of their activities. Such advisory opinions shall be rendered as a matter of urgency.

# Article 190 Limitation on jurisdiction with regard to decisions of the Authority

The Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber shall have no jurisdiction with regard to the exercise by the Authority of its discretionary powers in accordance with this Part; in no case shall it substitute its discretion for that of the Authority. Without prejudice to article 189, in exercising its jurisdiction pursuant to article 187, the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber shall not pronounce itself on the question of whether any rules, regulations or procedures adopted by the Authority are in conformity with the provisions of this Convention, nor declare any such rule, regulation or procedure invalid. Its jurisdiction shall be confined to determining whether the application of any rules, regulations or procedures to individual cases would be in conflict with the contractual and Conventional obligations of the parties to the dispute, and to claims concerning lack of competence or misuse of power, as well as to claims for damages to be paid or other remedy to be given to the party concerned for the failure of the other party to comply with its Conventional or contractual obligations.

## Article 191 Participation and appearance of sponsoring States Parties

- 1. In any dispute referred to in article 187 when a natural or juridical person is a party, the sponsoring State shall be given notice thereof, and shall have the right to participate in the proceedings by submitting written or oral statements.
- 2. In any dispute referred to in article 187, subparagraph (c), if an action is brought against a State Party by a natural or juridical person, of another nationality, the State Party sponsoring that person may be requested by the respondent State Party to appear in the proceedings on behalf of that person. Failing such appearance, the respondent State may arrange for the appearance on its behalf of a juridical person of its nationality.

### PART XII. PROTECTION AND PRESERVATION OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT

#### SECTION 1. GENERAL PROVISIONS

### Article 192 General obligation

States have the obligation to protect and preserve the marine environment.

# Sovereign right of States to exploit their natural resources

States have the sovereign right to exploit their natural resources pursuant to their environmental policies and in accordance with their duty to protect and preserve the marine environment.

# Article 194 Measures to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment

- 1. States shall take all necessary measures consistent with this Convention to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from any source using for this purpose the best practicable means at their disposal and in accordance with their capabilities, individually or jointly as appropriate, and they shall endeavour to harmonize their policies in this connexion.
- 2. States shall take all necessary measures to ensure that activities under their jurisdiction or control are so conducted that they do not cause damage by pollution to other States and their environment, and that pollution arising from incidents or activities under their jurisdiction or control does not spread beyond the areas where they exercise sovereign rights in accordance with this Convention.
- 3. The measures taken pursuant to this Part shall deal with all sources of pollution of the marine environment. These measures shall include, <u>inter alia</u>, those designed to minimize to the fullest possible extent:
- (a) Release of toxic, harmful or noxious substances, especially those which are persistent:
  - (i) from land-based sources;
  - (ii) from or through the atmosphere;
  - (iii) by dumping;
- (b) Pollution from vessels, in particular measures for preventing accidents and dealing with emergencies, ensuring the safety of operations at sea, preventing intentional and unintentional discharges, and regulating the design, construction, equipment, operation and manning of vessels;
- (c) Pollution from installations and devices used in exploration or exploitation of the natural resources of the sea-bed and subsoil, in particular measures for preventing accidents and dealing with emergencies, ensuring the safety of operations at sea, and regulating the design, construction, equipment, operation and manning of such installations or devices;

- (d) Pollution from other installations and devices operating in the marine environment, in particular measures for preventing accidents and dealing with emergencies, ensuring the safety of operations at sea, and regulating the design, construction, equipment, operation and manning of such installations or devices.
- 4. In taking measures to prevent, reduce or control pollution of the marine environment, States shall refrain from unjustifiable interference with activities in pursuance of the rights exercised and duties performed by other States in conformity with this Convention.
- 5. The measures taken in accordance with this Part shall include those necessary to protect and preserve rare or fragile ecosystems as well as the habitat of depleted, threatened or endangered species and other forms of marine life.

# Article 195 Duty not to transfer damage or hazards or transform one type of pollution into another

In taking measures to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment, States shall act so as not to transfer, directly or indirectly, damage or hazards from one area to another or transform one type of pollution into another.

# Use of technologies or introduction of alien or new species

- 1. States shall take all necessary measures to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment resulting from the use of technologies under their jurisdiction or control, or the intentional or accidental introduction of species, alien or new, to a particular part of the marine environment, which may cause significant and harmful changes thereto.
- 2. This article does not affect the application of this Convention regarding the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment.

#### SECTION 2. GLOBAL AND REGIONAL CO-OPERATION

### Article 197 Co-operation on a global or regional basis

States shall co-operate on a global basis and, as appropriate, on a regional basis, directly or through competent international organizations, in formulating and elaborating international rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures consistent with this Convention, for the protection and preservation of the marine environment, taking into account characteristic regional features.

### Article 198 Notification of imminent or actual damage

When a State becomes aware of cases in which the marine environment is in imminent danger of being damaged or has been damaged by pollution, it shall immediately notify other States it deems likely to be affected by such damage, as well as the competent international organizations.

### Article 199 Contingency plans against pollution

In the cases referred to in article 193, States in the area affected, in accordance with their capabilities, and the competent international organizations shall co-operate, to the extent possible, in eliminating the effects of pollution and preventing or minimizing the damage. To this end, States shall jointly develop and promote contingency plans for responding to pollution incidents in the marine environment.

# Article 200 Promotion of studies, research programmes and exchange of information and data

States shall co-operate, directly or through competent international organizations, for the purpose of promoting studies, undertaking programmes of scientific research and encouraging the exchange of information and data acquired about pollution of the marine environment. They shall endeavour to participate actively in regional and global programmes to acquire knowledge for the assessment of the nature and extent of pollution, the exposure to it, its pathways, risks and remedies.

### Article 201 Scientific criteria and regulations

In the light of the information and data acquired pursuant to article 200 States shall co-operate, directly or through competent international organizations, in establishing appropriate scientific criteria for the formulation and elaboration of rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment.

#### SECTION 3. TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE

### Article 202 Scientific and technical assistance to developing States

States shall directly or through competent international organizations:

- (a) Promote programmes of scientific, educational, technical and other assistance to developing States for the protection and preservation of the marine environment and the prevention, reduction and control of marine pollution. Such assistance shall include, inter alia:
  - (i) Training of their scientific and technical personnel;
  - (ii) Facilitating their participation in relevant international programmes;
  - (iii) Supplying necessary equipment and facilities;
  - (iv) Enhancing the capacity of developing States to manufacture such equipment;
  - (v) Developing facilities for and advice on research, monitoring, educational and other programmes;

7

- (b) Provide appropriate assistance, especially to developing States, for the minimization of the effects of major incidents which may cause serious pollution of the marine environment;
- (c) Provide appropriate assistance, especially to developing States, concerning the preparation of environmental assessments.

## Article 203 Preferential treatment for developing States

Developing States shall, for purposes of the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment or the minimization of its effects, be granted preference by international organizations in:

- (a) The allocation of appropriate funds and technical assistance; and
- (b) The utilization of their specialized services.

#### SECTION 4. MONITORING AND ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT

### Article 204 Monitoring of the risks or effects of pollution

- 1. States shall, consistent with the rights of other States, endeavour, as far as practicable, directly or through the competent international organizations, to observe, measure, evaluate and analyse, by recognized methods, the risks or effects of pollution of the marine environment.
- 2. In particular, States shall keep under surveillance the effects of any activities which they permit or in which they engage to determine whether these activities are likely to pollute the marine environment.

### Article 205 Publication of reports

States shall publish reports of the results obtained pursuant to article 204 or provide at appropriate intervals such reports to the competent international organizations, which should make them available to all States.

# Article 206 Assessment of potential effects of activities

When States have reasonable grounds for expecting that planned activities under their jurisdiction or control may cause substantial pollution of, or significant and harmful changes to, the marine environment, they shall, as far as practicable, assess the potential effects of such activities on the marine environment and shall communicate reports of the results of such assessments in the manner provided in article 205.

### SECTION 5. INTERNATIONAL RULES AND NATIONAL LEGISLATION TO PREVENT, REDUCE AND CONTROL POLLUTION OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT

## Article 207 Pollution from land-based sources

- 1. States shall adopt laws and regulations to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from land-based sources including rivers, estuaries, pipelines and outfall structures, taking into account internationally agreed rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures.
- 2. States shall take other measures as may be necessary to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from land-based sources.
- 5. States shall endeavour to harmonize their national policies at the appropriate regional level.
- 4. States, acting especially through competent international organizations or diplomatic conference, shall endeavour to establish global and regional rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from land-based sources, taking into account characteristic regional features, the economic capacity of developing States and their need for economic development. Such rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures shall be re-examined from time to time as necessary.
- 5. Laws, regulations, measures, rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures referred to in paragraphs 1, 2 and 4 respectively shall include those designed to minimize, to the fullest extent possible, the release of toxic, harmful or noxious substances, especially persistent substances, into the marine environment.

## Article 208 Pollution from sea-bed activities

- 1. Coastal States shall adopt laws and regulations to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment arising from or in connexion with sea-bed activities subject to their jurisdiction and from artificial islands, installations and structures under their jurisdiction, pursuant to articles 60 and 80.
- 2. States shall take other measures as may be necessary to prevent, reduce and control such pollution.
- 3. Such laws, regulations and measures shall be no less effective than international rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures.
- 4. States shall endeavour to harmonize their national policies at the appropriate regional level.
- 5. States, acting especially through competent international organizations or diplomatic conference, shall establish global and regional rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment arising from or in connexion with sea-bed activities subject to their jurisdiction and from artificial islands, installations and structures under their jurisdiction referred to in paragraph 1. Such rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures shall be re-examined from time to time as necessary.

#### Article 209 Pollution from activities in the Area

- 1. International rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures shall be established in accordance with the provisions of Part XI to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from activities in the Area. Such rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures shall be re-estamined from time to time as necessary.
- 2. Subject to the relevant provisions of this section, States shall adopt laws and regulations to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from activities in the Area undertaken by vessels, installations, structures and other devices flying their flag or of their registry or operating under their authority as the case may be. The requirements of such laws and regulations shall be no less effective than the international rules, standards, recommended practices and procedures referred to in paragraph 1.

#### Article 210 Dumping

- 1. States shall adopt laws and regulations to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment by dumping.
- 2. States shall take other measures as may be necessary to prevent, reduce and control such pollution.
- 3. Such laws, regulations and measures shall ensure that dumping is not carried out without the permission of the competent authorities of States.
- 4. States, acting especially through competent international organizations or diplomatic conference, shall endeavour to establish global and regional rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment by dumping. Such rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures shall be re-examined from time to time as necessary.
- 5. Dumping within the territorial sea and the exclusive economic zone or onto the continental shelf shall not be carried out without the express prior approval of the coastal State, which has the right to permit, regulate and control such dumping after due consideration of the matter with other States which by reason of their geographical situation may be adversely affected thereby.
- 6. National laws, regulations and measures shall be no less effective in preventing, reducing and controlling pollution of the marine environment by dumping than global rules and standards.

### Article 211 Pollution from vessels

l. States, acting through the competent international organization or general diplomatic conference, shall establish international rules and standards for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment from vessels and promote the adoption, in the same manner, wherever appropriate, of routing systems designed to minimize the threat of accidents which might cause pollution of the marine environment, including the coastline and related interests of coastal States. Such rules and standards shall, in the same manner, be re-examined from time to time as necessary.

- 2. States shall adopt laws and regulations for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment from vessels flying their flag or of their registry. Such laws and regulations shall at least have the same effect as that of generally accepted international rules and standards established through the competent international organization or general diplomatic conference.
- States which establish particular requirements for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment as a condition for the entry of foreign vessels into their ports or internal waters or for calling at their off-shore terminals shall give due publicity to such requirements and shall communicate them to the competent international organization. Whenever such requirements are established in identical form by two or more coastal States in an endeavour to harmonize policy, the communication shall indicate which States are participating in such co-operative arrangements. Every State shall require the master of a vessel flying its flag or of its registry, when navigating within the territorial sea of a State participating in such co-operative arrangements, to furnish, upon the request of that State, information as to whether it is proceeding to a State of the same region participating in such co-operative arrangements and, if so, to indicate whether it complies with the port entry requirements of that State. The provisions of this article shall be without prejudice to the continued exercise by a vessel of its right of innocent passage or to the application of article 25, paragraph 2.
- 4. Coastal States may, in the exercise of their sovereignty within their territorial sea, adopt laws and regulations for the prevention, reduction and control of marine pollution from foreign vessels, including vessels exercising the right of innocent passage. Such laws and regulations shall, in accordance with section 3 of Part II, not hamper innocent passage of foreign vessels.
- 5. Coastal States, for the purpose of enforcement as provided for in section 6, may in respect of their exclusive economic zones adopt laws and regulations for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from vessels conforming to and giving effect to generally accepted international rules and standards established through the competent international organization or general diplomatic conference.
- 6. Where international rules and standards referred to in paragraph 1 are inadequate to meet special circumstances and where coastal States have reasonable grounds for believing that a particular, clearly defined area of their respective exclusive economic zones is an area where, for recognized technical reasons in relation to its oceanographical and ecological conditions, as well as its utilization or the protection of its resources, and the particular character of its traffic, the adoption of special mandatory measures for the prevention of pollution from vessels is required, coastal States, after appropriate consultations through the competent international organization with any other States concerned, may for that area, direct a communication to the competent international organization, submitting

scientific and technical evidence in support, and information on necessary reception The organization shall, within 12 months after receiving such a communication, determine whether the conditions in that area correspond to the requirements set out above. If the organization so determines, the coastal State may, for that area, adopt laws and regulations for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from vessels, implementing such international rules and standards or navigational practices as are made applicable through the competent international organization for special areas. Coastal States shall publish the limits of any such particular, clearly defined area, and laws and regulations applicable therein shall not become applicable in relation to foreign vessels until 15 months after the submission of the communication to the competent international organization. Coastal States, when submitting the communication for the establishment of a special area within their respective exclusive economic zones, shall at the same time, notify the competent international organization if it is their intention to adopt additional laws and regulations for that special area for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from vessels. Such additional laws and regulations may relate to discharges or navigational practices but shall not require foreign vessels to observe design, construction, manning or equipment standards other than generally accepted international rules and standards and shall become applicable in relation to foreign vessels 15 months after the submission of the communication to the competent international organization, and provided the organization agrees within 12 months after submission of the communication.

7. The international rules and standards referred to in this article should include inter alia those related to prompt notification to coastal States, whose coastlines or related interests may be affected by incidents, including maritime casualties, which involve discharges or probability of discharges.

### Pollution from or through the atmosphere

- 1. States shall, within the air space under their sovereignty or with regard to vessels or aircraft flying their flag or of their registry, adopt laws and regulations to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from or through the atmosphere, taking into account internationally agreed rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures, and the safety of air navigation.
- 2. States shall take other measures as may be necessary to prevent, reduce and control such pollution.
- 3. States, acting especially through competent international organizations or diplomatic conference, shall endeavour to establish global and regional rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures to prevent, reduce and control such pollution.

#### SECTION 6. ENFORCEMENT

# Article 213 Enforcement with respect to land-based sources of pollution

States shall enforce their laws and regulations adopted in accordance with article 207 and shall adopt laws and regulations and take measures necessary to implement applicable international rules and standards established through competent international organizations or diplomatic conference for the protection and preservation of the marine environment from land-based sources of marine pollution.

# Enforcement with respect to pollution from sea-bed activities

States shall enforce their laws and regulations adopted in accordance with article 208 and shall adopt laws and regulations and take measures necessary to implement applicable international rules and standards established through competent international organizations or diplomatic conference for the protection and preservation of the marine environment from pollution arising from sea-bed activities subject to their jurisdiction and from artificial islands, installations and structures under their jurisdiction, pursuant to articles 60 and 80.

# Article 215 Enforcement with respect to pollution from activities in the Area

Enforcement of international rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures established to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from activities in the Area pursuant to Part XI shall be governed by the provisions of that Part.

### Article 216 Enforcement with respect to dumping

- 1. Laws and regulations adopted in accordance with this Convention and applicable international rules and standards established through competent international organizations or diplomatic conference for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment by dumping shall be enforced:
- (a) by the coastal State with regard to dumping within its territorial sea or its exclusive economic zone or onto its continental shelf;
- (b) by the flag State with regard to vessels and aircraft flying its flag or of its registry;
- (c) by any State with regard to acts of loading of wastes or other matter occurring within its territory or at its off-shore terminals.
- 2. This article does not impose on any State an obligation to institute proceedings when such proceedings have already been commenced by another State in accordance with this article.

### Article 217 Enforcement by flag States

- 1. States shall ensure compliance with applicable international rules and standards established through the competent international organization or diplomatic conference and with their laws and regulations adopted in accordance with this Convention for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment, by vessels flying their flag or of their registry and shall adopt laws and regulations and take other measures necessary for their implementation. Flag States shall provide for the effective enforcement of such rules, standards, laws and regulations, irrespective of where the violation occurred.
- 2. States shall, in particular, take appropriate measures in order to ensure that vessels flying their flags or of their registry are prohibited from sailing, until they can proceed to sea in compliance with the requirements of international rules and standards referred to in paragraph 1 for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from vessels, including the requirements in respect of design, construction, equipment and manning of vessels.
- 3. States shall ensure that vessels flying their flags or of their registry carry on board certificates required by and issued pursuant to international rules and standards referred to in paragraph 1. Flag States shall ensure that their vessels are periodically inspected in order to verify that such certificates are in conformity with the actual condition of the vessels. These certificates shall be accepted by other States as evidence of the condition of the vessel and regarded as having the same force as certificates issued by them, unless there are clear grounds for believing that the condition of the vessel does not correspond substantially with the particulars of the certificates.
- 4. If a vessel commits a violation of rules and standards established through the competent international organization or general diplomatic conference, the flag State, without prejudice to articles 218, 220 and 228 shall provide for immediate investigation and where appropriate institute proceedings in respect of the alleged violation irrespective of where the violation occurred or where the pollution caused by such violation has occurred or has been spotted.
- 5. Flag States in conducting an investigation of the violation may request the assistance of any other State whose co-operation could be useful in clarifying the circumstances of the case. States shall endeavour to meet the appropriate request of flag States.
- 6. Flag States shall, at the written request of any State, investigate any violation alleged to have been committed by their vessels. If satisfied that sufficient evidence is available to enable proceedings to be brought in respect of the alleged violation, flag States shall without delay institute such proceedings in accordance with their laws.
- 7. Flag States shall promptly inform the requesting State and the competent international organization of the action taken and its outcome. Such information shall be available to all States.
- 8. Penalties provided for by the laws and regulations of flag States for their own vessels shall be adequate in severity to discourage violations wherever the violations occur.

3

#### Article 218 Enforcement by port States

- 1. When a vessel is voluntarily within a part or at an off-shore terminal of a State, that State may undertake investigations and, where warranted by the evidence of the case, institute proceedings in respect of any discharge from that vessel in violation of applicable international rules and standards established through the competent international organization or general diplomatic conference, outside the internal waters, territorial sea, or exclusive economic zone of that State.
- 2. No proceedings pursuant to paragraph 1 shall be instituted in respect of a discharge violation in the internal waters, the territorial sea or exclusive economic zone of another State unless requested by that State, the flag State, or the State damaged or threatened by a discharge violation, or unless the violation has caused or is likely to cause pollution in the internal waters, territorial sea or exclusive economic zone of the State instituting the proceedings.
- 3. When a vessel is voluntarily within a port, or at an off-shore terminal, that State shall, as far as practicable, comply with requests from any State for investigation of a discharge violation of international rules and standards referred to in paragraph 1, believed to have occurred in, caused, or threatened damage to the internal waters, territorial sea or exclusive economic zone of the State making such a request, and likewise, shall, as far as practicable, comply with requests from the flag State for investigation of such a violation, irrespective of where the violation occurred.
- 4. The records of the investigation carried out by a port State pursuant to the provisions of this article shall be transferred to the flag State or to the coastal State at their request. Any proceedings initiated by the port State on the basis of such an investigation, subject to the provisions of section 7, may be suspended at the request of a coastal State, when the violation has occurred within the internal waters, territorial sea or exclusive economic zone of that State and the evidence and records of the case and any bond posted with the authorities of the port State shall be transferred to the coastal State. Such transfer shall preclude the continuation of proceedings in the port State.

## Article 219 Measures relating to seaworthiness of vessels to avoid pollution

Subject to the provisions of section 7, States which have ascertained, upon request or on their own initiative, that a vessel within their ports or at their off-shore terminals is in violation of applicable international rules and standards relating to seaworthiness of vessels and thereby threatens damage to the marine environment shall, as far as practicable, take administrative measures to prevent the vessel from sailing. Such States may permit the vessel to proceed only to the nearest appropriate repair yard and upon rectification of the causes of the violation, shall permit the vessel to continue immediately.

#### Article 220 Enforcement of coastal States

l. When a vessel is voluntarily within a port or at an off-shore terminal of a State, that State may, subject to the provisions of section 7, institute proceedings in respect of any violation of its laws and regulations adopted in accordance with this Convention or applicable international rules and standards for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from vessels when the violation has occurred within the territorial sea or the exclusive economic zone of that State.

- 92 -

- 2. Where there are clear grounds for believing that a vessel navigating in the territorial sea of a State has, during its passage therein, violated laws and regulations of that State adopted in accordance with this Convention or applicable international rules and standards for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from vessels, that State, without prejudice to the application of the relevant provisions of section 3 of Part II, may undertake physical inspection of the vessel relating to the violation and may, when warranted by the evidence of the case, institute proceedings, including detention of the vessel, in accordance with its laws, subject to the provisions of section 7.
- 3. Where there are clear grounds for believing that a vessel navigating in the exclusive economic zone or the territorial sea of a State has, in the exclusive economic zone, violated applicable international rules and standards or laws and regulations of that State conforming and giving effect to such international rules and standards for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from vessels, that State may require the vessel to give information regarding the identification of the vessel and its port of registry, its last and next port of call and other relevant information required to establish whether a violation has occurred.
- 4. Flag States shall adopt laws and regulations and take other measures so that their vessels comply with requests for information pursuant to paragraph 3.
- 5. Where there are clear grounds for believing that a vessel navigating in the exclusive economic zone or the territorial sea of a State has, in the exclusive economic zone, violated applicable international rules and standards or laws and regulations of that State conforming and giving effect to such international rules and standards for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from vessels and the violation has resulted in a substantial discharge causing or threatening significant pollution of the marine environment, that State may undertake physical inspection of the vessel for matters relating to the violation if the vessel has refused to give information or if the information supplied by the vessel is manifestly at variance with the evident factual situation and if the circumstances of the case justify such inspection.
- 6. Where there is clear objective evidence that a vessel navigating in the exclusive economic zone or the territorial sea of a State has, in the exclusive economic zone, committed a violation of applicable international rules and standards or laws and regulations of that State conforming and giving effect to such international rules and standards for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from vessels, resulting in a discharge causing major damage or threat of major damage to the coastline or related interests of the coastal State, or to any resources of its territorial sea or exclusive economic zone, that State may, subject to the provisions of section 7, provided that the evidence so warrants, institute proceedings, including detention of the vessel, in accordance with its laws.
- 7. Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph 6, whenever appropriate procedures have been established either through the competent international organization or as otherwise agreed, whereby compliance with requirements for bonding or other appropriate financial security has been assured, the coastal State if bound by such procedures shall allow the vessel to proceed.
- 8. The provisions of paragraphs 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 apply correspondingly in respect of national laws and regulations adopted pursuant to article 211, paragraph 6.

# Article 221 Measures relating to maritime casualties to avoid pollution

- 1. Nothing in this Part shall prejudice the right of States, pursuant to international law, both customary and conventional, to take and enforce measures beyond the territorial sea proportionate to the actual or threatened damage to protect their coastline or related interests, including fishing, from pollution or threat of pollution following upon a maritime casualty or acts relating to such a casualty, which may reasonable be expected to result in major harmful consequences.
- 2. For the purposes of this article, "maritime casualty" means a collision of vessels, stranding or other incident of navigation, or other occurrence on board a vessel or external to it resulting in material damage or imminent threat of material damage to a vessel or eargo.

# Article 222 Enforcement with respect to pollution from or through the atmosphere

States shall enforce, within the air space under their sovereignty or with regard to vessels or aircraft flying their flag or of their registry, their laws and regulations adopted in accordance with article 212, paragraph 1, and with other provisions of this Convention and shall adopt laws and regulations necessary and take other measures to implement applicable international rules and standards established through competent international organizations or diplomatic conference to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from and through the atmosphere, in conformity with all relevant international rules and standards concerning the safety of air navigation.

#### SECTION 7. SAFEGUARDS

### Article 223 Measures to facilitate proceedings

In proceedings instituted pursuant to this Part, States shall take measures to facilitate the hearing of witnesses and the admission of evidence submitted by authorities of another State, or by the competent international organization, and shall facilitate the attendance at such proceedings of official representatives of the competent international organization or of the flag State, or of any State affected by pollution arising out of any violation. The official representatives attending such proceedings shall have such rights and duties as may be provided under national laws and regulations or international law.

### Article 224 Exercise of powers of enforcement

The powers of enforcement against foreign vessels under this Part may only be exercised by officials or by warships, military aircraft or other ships or aircraft clearly marked and identifiable as being on government service and authorized to that effect.

# Article 225 Duty to avoid adverse consequences in the exercise of the powers of enforcement

In the exercise under this Convention of their powers of enforcement against foreign vessels, States shall not endanger the safety of navigation or otherwise create any hazard to a vessel, or bring it to an unsafe port or anchorage, or expose the marine environment to an unreasonable risk.

### Article 226 Investigation of foreign vessels

States shall not delay a foreign vessel longer than is essential for purposes of the investigations provided for in articles 216, 218 and 220. Any physical inspection of a foreign vessel shall be limited to an examination of such certificates, records or other documents as the vessel is required to carry by generally accepted international rules and standards or of any similar documents which it is carrying. Following such an examination, an inspection of the vessel may be undertaken only when there are clear grounds for believing that the condition of the vessel or its equipment does not correspond substantially with the particulars of those documents or when the contents of such documents are not sufficient to confirm or verify a suspected violation or when the vessel is not carrying valid certificates and records. If the investigation indicates a violation of applicable laws and regulations or international rules and standards for the protection and preservation of the marine environment, release shall be made promptly subject to reasonable procedures such as bonding or other appropriate financial security. Without prejudice to applicable international rules and standards relating to the seaworthiness of vessels, the release of a vessel may, whenever it would present an unreasonable threat of damage to the marine environment, be refused or made conditional upon proceeding to the nearest appropriate repair yard. In situations where release has been refused or made conditional, the flag State of the vessel must be promptly notified, and may seek release of the vessel in accordance with the provisions of Part XV.

2. States shall co-operate to develop procedures for the avoidance of unnecessary physical inspection of vessels at sea.

#### Article 227 Non-discrimination of foreign vessels

In exercising their rights and carrying out their duties under this Part, States shall not discriminate in form or in fact against vessels of any other State.

# Article 228 Suspension and restrictions on institution of proceedings

- Proceedings to impose penalties in respect of any violation of applicable laws and regulations or international rules and standards relating to the prevention, reduction and control of pollution from vessels committed by a foreign vessel beyond the territorial sea of the State instituting proceedings shall be suspended upon the taking of proceedings to impose penalties under corresponding charges by the flag State within six months of the first institution of proceedings, unless those proceedings relate to a case of major damage to the coastal State or the flag State in question has repeatedly disregarded its obligations to enforce effectively the applicable international rules and standards in respect of violations committed by its vessels. The flag State shall in due course make available to the first State instituting proceedings a full dossier of the case and the records of the proceedings, whenever the flag State has requested the suspension of proceedings in accordance with the provisions of this article. When proceedings by the flag State have been brought to a conclusion, the suspended proceedings shall be terminated. Upon payment of costs incurred in respect of such proceedings, any bond posted or other financial security provided in connexion with the suspended proceedings shall be released by the coastal State.
- 2. Proceedings to impose penalties on foreign vessels shall not be instituted after the expiry of three years from the date on which the violation was committed, and shall not be taken by any State in the event of proceedings having been instituted by another State subject to the provisions set out in paragraph 1.
- 3. The provisions of this article are without prejudice to the right of the flag State to take any measures, including proceedings to impose penalties, according to its laws irrespective of prior proceedings by another State.

### Article 229 Institution of civil proceedings

Nothing in this Convention affects the institution of civil proceedings in respect of any claim for loss or damage resulting from pollution of the marine environment.

# Monetary penalties and the observance of recognized rights of the accused

1. Monetary penalties only may be imposed with respect to violations of national laws and regulations or applicable international rules and standards for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment, committed by foreign vessels beyond the territorial sea.

- 2. Monetary penalties only may be imposed with respect to violations of national laws and regulations or applicable international rules and standards for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment, committed by foreign vessels in the territorial sea, except in the case of a wilful and serious act of pollution in the territorial sea.
- 3. In the conduct of proceedings in respect of such violations committed by a foreign vessel which may result in the imposition of penalties, recognized rights of the accused shall be observed.

# Article 231 Notification to flag States and other States concerned

States shall promptly notify the flag State and any other State concerned of any measure taken pursuant to section 6 against foreign vessels, and shall submit to the flag State all official reports concerning such measures. However, with respect to violations committed in the territorial sea, the foregoing obligations of the coastal State apply only to such measures as are taken in proceedings. The consular officers or diplomatic agents, and where possible the maritime authority of the flag State, shall be immediately informed of any such measures.

#### Article 232 Liability of States arising from enforcement measures

States shall be liable for damage or loss attributable to them arising from measures taken pursuant to section 6 when such measures were unlawful or exceeded those reasonably required in the light of available information. States shall provide for recourse in their courts for actions in respect of such damage or loss.

# Safeguards with respect to straits used for international navigation

Nothing in sections 5, 6 and 7 affects the legal régime of straits used for international navigation. However, if a foreign ship other than those referred to in section 10 has committed a violation of the laws and regulations referred to in article 42, paragraph 1 (a) and (b), causing or threatening major damage to the marine environment of the straits, the States bordering the straits may take appropriate enforcement measures and if so shall respect <u>mutatis mutandis</u> the provisions of this section.

#### SECTION 8. ICE-COVERED AREAS

#### Article 234 Ice-covered areas

Coastal States have the right to adopt and enforce non-discriminatory laws and regulations for the prevention, reduction and control of marine pollution from vessels in ice-covered areas within the limits of the exclusive economic zone, where particularly severe climatic conditions and the presence of ice covering such areas for most of the year create obstructions or exceptional hazards to navigation, and pollution of the marine environment could cause major harm to or irreversible disturbance of the ecological balance. Such laws and regulations shall have due regard to navigation and the protection and preservation of the marine environment based on the best available scientific evidence.

#### SECTION 9. RESPONSIBILITY AND LIABILITY

### Article 235 Responsibility and liability

- 1. States are responsible for the fulfilment of their international obligations concerning the protection and preservation of the marine environment. They shall be liable in accordance with international law.
- 2. States shall ensure that recourse is available in accordance with their legal systems for prompt and adequate compensation or other relief in respect of damage caused by pollution of the marine environment by natural or juridical persons under their jurisdiction.
- 3. With the objective of assuring prompt and adequate compensation in respect of all damage caused by pollution of the marine environment, States shall co-operate in the implementation of existing international law and the further development of international law relating to responsibility and liability for the assessment of and compensation for damage and the settlement of related disputes, as well as, where appropriate, development of criteria and procedures for payment of adequate compensation such as compulsory insurance or compensation funds.

#### SECTION 10. SOVEREIGN IMMUNITY

### Article 236 Sovereign immunity

The provisions of this Convention regarding the protection and preservation of the marine environment do not apply to any warship, naval auxiliary, other vessels or aircraft owned or operated by a State and used, for the time being, only on government non-commercial service. However, each State shall ensure by the adoption of appropriate measures not impairing operations or operational capabilities of such vessels or aircraft owned or operated by it, that such vessels or aircraft act in a manner consistent, so far as is reasonable and practicable, with this Convention.

#### SECTION 11. OBLIGATIONS UNDER OTHER CONVENTIONS ON THE PROTECTION AND PRESERVATION OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT

# Obligations under other conventions on the protection and preservation of the marine environment

- 1. The provisions of this Part are without prejudice to the specific obligations assumed by States under special conventions and agreements concluded previously which relate to the protection and preservation of the marine environment and to agreements which may be concluded in furtherance of the general principles set forth in this Convention.
- 2. Specific obligations assumed by States under special conventions, with respect to the protection and preservation of the marine environment, should be carried out in a manner consistent with the general principles and objectives of this Convention.

#### PART XIII. MARINE SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH

#### SECTION 1. GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### Article 238 Right to conduct marine scientific research

All States, irrespective of their geographical location, and competent international organizations have the right to conduct marine scientific research subject to the rights and duties of other States as provided for in this Convention.

#### Article 239 Promotion of marine scientific research

States and competent international organizations shall promote and facilitate the development and conduct of marine scientific research in accordance with this Convention.

# General principles for the conduct of marine scientific research

In the conduct of marine scientific research the following principles shall apply:

- (a) Marine scientific research shall be conducted exclusively for peaceful purposes;
- (b) Such research shall be conducted with appropriate scientific methods and means compatible with this Convention;
- (c) Such research shall not unjustifiably interfere with other legitimate uses of the sea compatible with this Convention and shall be duly respected in the course of such uses;
- (d) Such research shall comply with all relevant regulations adopted in conformity with this Convention including those for the protection and preservation of the marine environment.

# Article 241 Harine scientific research activities not constituting the legal basis for any claim

Marine scientific research activities shall not constitute the legal basis for any claim to any part of the marine environment or its resources.

#### SECTION 2. GLOBAL AND REGIONAL CO-OPERATION

#### Article 242 Promotion of international co-operation

1. States and competent international organizations shall, in accordance with the principle of respect for sovereignty and jurisdiction and on the basis of mutual benefit, promote international co-operation in marine scientific research for peaceful purposes.

2. In this context, without prejudice to the rights and duties of States under this Convention, a State, in the application of this Part, shall provide, as appropriate, other States with a reasonable opportunity to obtain from it, or with its co-operation, information necessary to prevent and control damage to the health and safety of persons and the environment.

#### Article 243 Creation of favourable conditions

States and competent international organizations shall co-operate, through the conclusion of bilateral and multilateral agreements, to create favourable conditions for the conduct of marine scientific research in the marine environment and to integrate the efforts of scientists in studying the essence of and the interrelations between phenomena and processes occurring in the marine environment.

# Article 244 Publication and dissemination of information and knowledge

- 1. States and competent international organizations shall, in accordance with this Convention, make available by publication and dissemination through appropriate channels information on proposed major programmes and their objectives as well as knowledge resulting from marine scientific research.
- 2. For this purpose, States, both individually and in co-operation with other States and with competent international organizations, shall actively promote the flow of scientific data and information and the transfer of knowledge resulting from marine scientific research especially to developing States, as well as the strengthening of the autonomous marine scientific research capabilities of developing States through, inter alia, programmes to provide adequate education and training of their technical and scientific personnel.

#### SECTION 3. CONDUCT AND PROMOTION OF MARINE SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH

# Article 245 Marine scientific research in the territorial sea

Coastal States, in the exercise of their sovereignty, have the exclusive right to regulate, authorize and conduct marine scientific research in their territorial sea. Marine scientific research therein shall be conducted only with the express consent of and under the conditions set forth by the coastal State.

# Article 246 Marine scientific research in the exclusive economic zone and on the continental shelf

- 1. Coastal States, in the exercise of their jurisdiction, have the right to regulate, authorize and conduct marine scientific research in their exclusive economic zone and on their continental shelf in accordance with the relevant provisions of this Convention.
- 2. Marine scientific research in the exclusive economic zone and on the continental shelf shall be conducted with the consent of the coastal State.

- 3. Coastal States shall, in normal circumstances, grant their consent for marine scientific research projects by other States or competent international organizations in their exclusive economic zone or on their continental shelf to be carried out in accordance with this Convention exclusively for peaceful purposes and in order to increase scientific knowledge of the marine environment for the benefit of all mankind. To this end, coastal States shall establish rules and procedures ensuring that such consent will not be delayed or denied unreasonably.
- 4. Normal circumstances may exist in spite of the absence of diplomatic relations between the coastal State and the researching State for the purposes of applying paragraph 3.
- 5. Coastal States may however in their discretion withhold their consent to the conduct of a marine scientific research project of another State or competent international organization in the exclusive economic zone or on the continental shelf of the coastal State if that project:
- (a) is of direct significance for the exploration and exploitation of natural resources, whether living or non-living;
- (b) involves drilling into the continental shelf, the use of explosives or the introduction of harmful substances into the marine environment;
- (c) involves the construction, operation or use of artificial islands, installations and structures referred to in articles 60 and 80;
- (d) contains information communicated pursuant to article 248 regarding the the nature and objectives of the project which is inaccurate or if the researching State or competent international organization has outstanding obligations to the coastal State from a prior research project.
- 6. Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph 5, coastal States may not exercise their discretion to withhold consent under subparagraph (a) of the above-mentioned paragraph in respect of marine scientific research projects to be undertaken in accordance with the provisions of this Part on the continental shelf, beyond 200 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured, outside those specific areas which coastal States may at any time publicly designate as areas in which exploitation or detailed exploratory operations focused on those areas are occurring or will occur within a reasonable period of time. Coastal States shall give reasonable notice of the designation of such areas, as well as any modifications thereto, but shall not be obliged to give details of the operations therein.
- 7. The provisions of paragraph 6 are without prejudice to the rights of coastal States over the continental shelf as established in article 77.
- 8. Marine scientific research activities referred to in this article shall not unjustifiably interfere with activities undertaken by coastal States in accordance with their sovereign rights and jurisdiction as provided for in this Convention.

# Marine scientific research projects undertaken by, or under the auspices of, international organizations

A coastal State which is a member of an international organization or has a bilateral agreement with such an organization, and in whose exclusive economic zone or on whose continental shelf the organization wants to carry out, directly or under its auspices, a marine scientific research project, shall be deemed to have authorized the project to be carried out in conformity with the agreed specifications if that State approved the detailed project when the decision was made by the organization for the undertaking of the project, or is willing to participate in it, and has not expressed any objection within four months of notification of the project by the organization to the coastal State.

# Duty to provide information to the coastal State

States and competent international organizations which intend to undertake marine scientific research in the exclusive economic zone or on the continental shelf of a coastal State shall, not less than six months in advance of the expected starting date of the marine scientific research project, provide that State with a full description of:

- (a) the nature and objectives of the project;
- (b) the method and means to be used, including name, tonnage, type and class of vessels and a description of scientific equipment;
  - (c) the precise geographical areas in which the project is to be conducted;
- (d) the expected date of first appearance and final departure of the research vessels, or deployment of the equipment and its removal, as appropriate;
- (e) the name of the sponsoring institution, its director, and the person in charge of the project; and
- (f) the extent to which it is considered that the coastal State should be able to participate or to be represented in the project.

### <u>Article 249</u> Duty to comply with certain conditions

- 1. States and competent international organizations when undertaking marine scientific research in the exclusive economic zone or on the continental shelf of a coastal State shall comply with the following conditions:
- (a) ensure the right of the coastal State, if it so desires, to participate or be represented in the marine scientific research project, especially on board research vessels and other craft or scientific research installations, when practicable, without payment of any remuneration to the scientists of the coastal State and without obligation to contribute towards the costs of the project;

- (b) provide the coastal State, at its request, with preliminary reports, as soon as practicable, and with the final results and conclusions after the completion of the research;
- (c) undertake to provide access for the coastal State, at its request, to all data and samples derived from the marine scientific research project and likewise to furnish it with data which may be copied and samples which may be divided without detriment to their scientific value;
- (d) if requested, provide the coastal State with an assessment of such data, samples and research results or provide assistance in their assessment or interpretation;
- (e) ensure, subject to paragraph 2, that the research results are made internationally available through appropriate national or international channels, as soon as feasible;
- (f) inform the coastal State immediately of any major change in the research programme;
- (g) unless otherwise agreed, remove the scientific research installations or equipment once the research is completed.
- 2. This article is without prejudice to the conditions established by the laws and regulations of the coastal State for the exercise of its discretion to grant or withhold consent pursuant to article 246, paragraph 5, including requiring prior agreement for making internationally available the research results of a project of direct significance for the exploration and exploitation of natural resources.

### Article 250 Communications concerning marine scientific research projects

Communications concerning the marine scientific research projects shall be made through appropriate official channels unless otherwise agreed.

### Article 251 General criteria and guidelines

States shall seek to promote through competent international organizations the establishment of general criteria and guidelines to assist States in ascertaining the nature and implications of marine scientific research.

### Article 252 Implied consent

States or competent international organizations may proceed with a marine scientific research project upon the expiry of six months from the date upon which the information required pursuant to article 248 was provided to the coastal State unless within four months of the receipt of the communication containing such information the coastal State has informed the State or organization conducting the research that:

- (a) it has withheld its consent under the provisions of article 246; or
- (b) the information given by the State or competent international organization in question regarding the nature or objectives of the project does not conform to the manifestly evident facts; or
- (c) it requires supplementary information relevant to conditions and the information provided for under articles 248 and 249; or
- (d) outstanding obligations exist with respect to a previous marine scientific research project carried out by that State or organization, with regard to conditions established in article 249.

### Article 253 Suspension or cessation of marine scientific research activities

- 1. Coastal States shall have the right to require the suspension of any marine scientific research activities in progress within its exclusive economic zone or on its continental shelf if:
- (a) the research activities are not being conducted in accordance with the information communicated as provided under article 243 upon which the consent of the coastal State was based; or
- (b) the State or competent international organization conducting the research activities fails to comply with the provisions of article 249 concerning the rights of the coastal State with respect to the marine scientific research project.
- 2. Coastal States shall have the right to require the cessation of any marine scientific research activities in case of any non-compliance with the provisions of article 248 which amounts to a major change in the research project or the research activities.
- 3. Coastal States may also require cessation of marine scientific research activities if any of the situations contemplated in paragraph 1 are not rectified within a reasonable period of time.
- 4. Following notification by the coastal State of its decision to order suspension or cessation, States or competent international organizations authorized to conduct marine scientific research activities shall terminate the research activities that are subject of such a notification.
- 5. An order of suspension under paragraph 1 shall be lifted by the coastal State and the marine scientific research activities allowed to continue once the researching State or competent international organization has complied with the conditions required under articles 248 and 249.

# Article 254 Rights of neighbouring land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States 6/

- l. States and competent international organizations which have submitted to a coastal State a project to undertake marine scientific research referred to in article 246, paragraph 3, shall give notice to the neighbouring land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States of the proposed research project. Those States or competent international organizations shall notify the coastal State of such notice given to the land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States.
- 2. After the consent has been given for such a proposed marine scientific research project by the coastal State concerned, in accordance with article 246 and other relevant provisions of this Convention, States and competent international organizations undertaking such a project, shall provide the neighbouring land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States, at their request and when appropriate, with relevant information as specified in articles 248 and 249, paragraph 1 (f).
- 3. The neighbouring land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States referred to above, shall, at their request, be given the opportunity to participate, whenever feasible, in the proposed marine scientific research project through qualified experts appointed by them and not objected to by the coastal State, in accordance with the conditions governing the project as agreed upon, in conformity with the provisions of this Convention, between the coastal State concerned and the State or competent international organizations conducting the marine scientific research.
- 4. States and competent international organizations referred to in paragraph 1 of this article, shall provide the above-mentioned land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States, at their request, the information and assistance specified in article 249, paragraph 1 (d), subject to the provisions of article 249, paragraph 2.

# Measures to facilitate marine scientific research and assist research vessels

States shall endeavour to adopt reasonable rules, regulations and procedures to promote and facilitate marine scientific research, conducted in accordance with this Convention, beyond their territorial sea and, as appropriate, to facilitate, subject to the provisions of their laws and regulations, access to their harbours and promote assistance for marine scientific research vessels, which comply with the relevant provisions of this Part.

### Article 256 Marine scientific research in the Area

All States, irrespective of their geographical location, as well as competent international organizations, have the right, in conformity with the provisions of Part XI, to conduct marine scientific research in the Area.

<sup>6/</sup> The terms "geographically disadvantaged States" and "States with special geographic characteristics" (used in article 70), should be harmonized by the Conference.

# Marine scientific research in the water column beyond the exclusive economic zone

All States, irrespective of their geographical location, as well as competent international organizations, have the right, in conformity with this Convention, to conduct marine scientific research in the water column beyond the limits of the exclusive economic zone.

SECTION 4. LEGAL STATUS OF SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH INSTALLATIONS OR EQUIPMENT IN THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT

### Article 258 Deployment and use

The deployment and use of any type of scientific research installations or equipment in any area of the marine environment shall be subject to the same conditions as are prescribed in this Convention for the conduct of marine scientific research in any such area.

#### Article 259 Legal status

The installations or equipment referred to in this section do not possess the status of islands. They have no territorial sea of their own, and their presence does not affect the delimitation of the territorial sea, the exclusive economic zone or the continental shelf.

#### Article 260 Safety zones

Safety zones of a reasonable width not exceeding a distance of 500 metres may be created around scientific research installations in accordance with the relevant provisions of this Convention. All States shall ensure that such safety zones are respected by their vessels.

### Article 261 Non-interference with shipping routes

The deployment and use of any type of scientific research installations or equipment shall not constitute an obstacle to established international shipping routes.

### Article 262 Identification markings and warning signals

Installations or equipment referred to in this section shall bear identification markings indicating the State of registry or the international organization to which they belong and shall have adequate internationally agreed warning signals to ensure safety at sea and the safety of air navigation, taking into account rules and standards established by competent international organizations.

#### SECTION 5. RESPONSIBILITY AND LIABILITY

### Article 263 Responsibility and liability

- 1. States and competent international organizations shall be responsible for ensuring that marine scientific research, whether undertaken by them or on their behalf, is conducted in accordance with this Convention.
- 2. States and competent international organizations shall be responsible and liable for the measures they take in contravention of this Convention in respect of marine scientific research conducted by other States, their natural or juridical persons or by competent international organizations, and shall provide compensation for damage resulting from such measures.
- 3. States and competent international organizations shall be responsible and liable pursuant to article 235 for damage caused by pollution of the marine environment arising out of marine scientific research undertaken by them or on their behalf.

#### SECTION 6. SETTLEMENT OF DISPUTES AND INTERIM MEASURES

#### Article 264 Settlement of disputes

Disputes relating to the interpretation or application of the provisions of this Convention with regard to marine scientific research shall be settled in accordance with section 2 of Part XV.

### Article 265 Interim measures

Pending settlement of a dispute in accordance with section 2 of Part XV, the State or competent international organization authorized to conduct a marine scientific research project shall not allow research activities to commence or continue without the express consent of the coastal State concerned.

### PART XIV. DEVELOPMENT AND TRANSFER OF MARINE TECHNOLOGY

#### SECTION 1. GENERAL PROVISIONS

# Article 266 Promotion of the development and transfer of marine technology

- l. States, directly or through competent international organizations, shall co-operate within their capabilities to promote actively the development and transfer of marine science and marine technology on fair and reasonable terms and conditions.
- 2. States shall promote the development of the marine scientific and technological capacity of States which may need and request technical assistance in this field, particularly developing States, including land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States, with regard to the exploration, exploitation, conservation and management of marine resources, the protection and preservation of the marine environment, marine scientific research and other activities in the marine environment compatible with this Convention, with a view to accelerating the social and economic development of the developing States.
- 3. States shall endeavour to foster favourable economic and legal conditions for the transfer of marine technology for the benefit of all parties concerned on an equitable basis.

### Article 267 Protection of legitimate interests

States, in promoting co-operation, pursuant to article 266, shall have due regard for all legitimate interests including, <u>inter alia</u>, the rights and duties of holders, suppliers and recipients of marine technology.

### Article 268 Basic objectives

States, directly or through competent international organizations, shall promote:

- (a) the acquisition, evaluation and dissemination of marine technological knowledge and facilitate access to such information and data;
  - (b) the development of appropriate marine technology;
- (c) the development of the necessary technological infrastructure to facilitate the transfer of marine technology;
- (d) the development of human resources through training and education of nationals of developing States and countries and especially of the least developed among them;
- (e) international co-operation at all levels, particularly at the regional, subregional and bilateral levels.

### Article 269 Measures to achieve the basic objectives

In order to achieve the above-mentioned objectives, States, directly or through competent international organizations, shall endeavour, <u>inter alia</u>, to:

- (a) establish programmes of technical co-operation for the effective transfer of all kinds of marine technology to States which may need and request technical assistance in this field, particularly the developing land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States, as well as other developing States which have not been able either to establish or develop their own technological capacity in marine science and in the exploration and exploitation of marine resources, or to develop the infrastructure of such technology;
- (b) promote favourable conditions for the conclusion of agreements, contracts and other similar arrangements, under equitable and reasonable conditions;
- (c) hold conferences, seminars and symposia on scientific and technological subjects, in particular on policies and methods for the transfer of marine technology;
  - (d) promote the exchange of scientists, technological and other experts;
- (e) undertake projects and promote joint ventures and other forms of bilateral and multilateral co-operation.

#### SECTION 2. INTERNATIONAL CO-OPERATION

#### Mays and means of international co-operation

International co-operation for the development and transfer of marine technology shall be carried out, where feasible and appropriate, through existing bilateral, regional or multilateral programmes, and also through expanded and new programmes in order to facilitate marine scientific research, the transfer of marine technology, particularly in new fields, and appropriate international funding for ocean research and development.

#### Article 271 Guidelines, criteria and standards

States, directly or through competent international organizations, shall promote the establishment of generally accepted guidelines, criteria and standards for the transfer of marine technology on a bilateral basis or within the framework of international organizations and other fora, taking into account, in particular, the interests and needs of developing States.

#### Article 272 Co-ordination of international programmes

In the field of transfer of marine technology, States shall endeavour to ensure that competent international organizations co-ordinate their activities, including any regional or global programmes taking into account the interests and needs of developing States, particularly land-locked and geographically disadvantaged States.

# Article 273 Co-operation with international organizations and the Authority in the transfer of marine technology to developing States

States shall co-operate actively with competent international organizations and the Authority, to encourage and facilitate the transfer to developing States, their nationals and the Enterprise of skills and technology with regard to activities in the Area.

# Article 274 Objectives of the Authority with respect to the transfer of marine technology

Subject to all legitimate interests including, <u>inter alia</u>, the rights and duties of holders, suppliers and recipients of technology, the Authority, with regard to activities in the Area. shall ensure that:

- (a) on the basis of the principle of equitable geographical distribution, nationals of developing States, whether coastal, land-locked or geographically disadvantaged, shall be taken on for the purposes of training as members of the managerial, research and technical staff constituted for its undertakings;
- (b) the technical documentation on the relevant equipment, machinery, devices and processes be made available to all States, in particular developing States which may need and request technical assistance in this field;
- (c) adequate provision is made by the Authority to facilitate the acquisition by States which may need and request technical assistance in the field of marine technology, in particular developing States, and the acquisition by their nationals of the necessary skills and know-how, including professional training;
- (d) States which may need and request technical assistance in this field, in particular developing States, are assisted in the acquisition of necessary equipment, processes, plant and other technical know-how through any financial arrangements provided for in this Convention.

### SECTION 3. NATIONAL AND REGIONAL MARINE SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNOLOGICAL CENTRES

### Article 275 Establishment of national centres

- 1. States, directly or through competent international organizations and the Authority, shall promote the establishment, particularly in developing coastal States, of national marine scientific and technological research centres and the strengthening of existing national centres, in order to stimulate and advance the conduct of marine scientific research by developing coastal States and to enhance their national capabilities to utilize and preserve their marine resources for their economic benefit.
- 2. States, through competent international organizations and the Authority, shall give adequate support to facilitate the establishment and strengthening of such national centres so as to provide for advanced training facilities and necessary equipment, skills and know-how as well as technical experts to such States which may need and request such assistance.

#### <u>Article 276</u> Establishment of regional centres

- 1. States, in co-ordination with the competent international organizations, the Authority and national marine scientific and technological institutions, shall promote the establishment, particularly in developing States, of regional marine scientific and technological research centres in order to stimulate and advance the conduct of marine scientific research by developing States and foster the transfer of marine technology.
- 2. All States of the region shall duly co-operate with the regional centres in order to ensure the more effective achievement of their objectives.

### Article 277 Functions of regional centres

The functions of such regional centres shall include, inter clia:

- (a) training and educational programmes at all levels on various aspects of marine scientific and technological research, particularly marine biology, including conservation and management of living resources, oceanography, hydrography, engineering, geological exploration of the sea-bed, mining and desalination technologies;
  - (b) management studies;
- (c) study programmes related to the protection and preservation of the marine environment and the prevention, reduction and control of pollution;
  - (d) organization of regional conferences, seminars and symposia;
- (e) acquisition and processing of marine scientific and technological data and information;
- (f) prompt dissemination of results of marine scientific and technological research in readily available publications;
- (g) publicizing national policies with regard to the transfer of marine technology and systematic comparative study of those policies;
- (h) compilation and systematization of information on the marketing of technology and on contracts and other arrangements concerning patents;
  - (i) technical co-operation with other States of the region.

#### SECTION 4. CO-OPERATION AMONG INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

### Article 278 Co-operation among international organizations

The competent international organizations referred to in this Part and in Part XIII shall take all appropriate measures to ensure, either directly or in close co-operation among themselves, the effective discharge of the functions and responsibilities assigned to them under this Part.

#### PART XV. SETTLEMENT OF DISPUTES

#### SECTION 1

#### GENERAL PROVISIONS AND GENERAL OBLIGATIONS

### Article 279 Obligation to settle disputes by peaceful means

The States Parties shall settle any dispute between them relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention in accordance with paragraph 3 of Article 2, and shall seek a solution through the peaceful means indicated in paragraph 1 of Article 33, of the Charter of the United Nations.

### Article 280 Settlement of disputes by means chosen by the parties

Nothing in this Part shall impair the right of any States Parties to agree at any time to settle a dispute between them relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention by any peaceful means of their own choice.

### Article 281 Obligation to exchange views

- l. If a dispute arises between States Parties relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention, the parties to the dispute shall proceed expeditiously to exchange views regarding settlement of the dispute through negotiations in good faith or other peaceful means.
- 2. Similarly, the parties shall proceed to an exchange of views whenever a procedure for the settlement of a dispute has been terminated without a settlement of the dispute, or where a settlement has been reached and the circumstances require further consultation regarding the manner of its implementation.

# Article 282 Obligations under general, regional or special agreements or other instruments

If States Parties which are parties to a dispute relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention have accepted, through a general, regional or special agreement or some other instrument or instruments, an obligation to settle such dispute by resort to a procedure entailing a binding decision, such dispute shall, at the request of any party to the dispute, be referred to such procedure. In this case any other procedure provided in this Part shall not apply, unless the parties to the dispute otherwise agree.

### Procedure when dispute is not settled by means chosen by the parties

- 1. If States Parties which are parties to a dispute relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention have agreed to seek a settlement of such dispute by a peaceful means of their own choice, the procedure specified in this Part shall apply only where no settlement has been reached, and the agreement between the parties does not preclude any further procedure.
- 2. If the parties have also agreed on a time-limit for such a procedure, the provisions of paragraph 1 shall apply only upon the expiration of that time-limit.

#### Article 284 Conciliation

- 1. Any State Party which is a party to a dispute relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention may invite the other party or parties to the dispute to submit the dispute to conciliation in accordance with the procedure in Section 1 of annex V, or with some other conciliation procedure.
- 2. If the other party accepts this invitation and if the parties agree upon the procedure in section 1 of annex V or such other conciliation procedure, any party to the dispute may submit it to the agreed procedure.
- 3. If the other party does not accept the invitation or the parties do not agree upon the procedure in section 1 of annex V or such other conciliation procedure, the conciliation proceedings shall be deemed to be terminated.
- 4. When a dispute has been submitted to conciliation, such conciliation proceedings may only be terminated in accordance with the provisions of section 1 of annex V or other agreed conciliation procedure, as the case may be.

#### Article 285 Application of this section to disputes submitted pursuant to Part XI

The provisions of this section shall apply to any dispute which pursuant to section 6 of Part XI is to be settled in accordance with procedures provided for in this Part. If an entity other than a State Party is a party to such a dispute, this section shall apply <u>mutatis mutandis</u>.

#### SECTION 2

#### COMPULSORY PROCEDURES ENTAILING BINDING DECISIONS

### Application of section 1 and proceedings under this section

Subject to the provisions of section 3, any dispute relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention shall, where no settlement has been reached by recourse to the provisions of section 1, be submitted at the request of any party to the dispute, to the court or tribunal having jurisdiction under the provisions of this section.

#### Article 287 Choice of procedure

- 1. A State Party, when signing, ratifying or otherwise expressing its consent to be bound by this Convention, or at any time thereafter, shall be free to choose, by means of a written declaration, one or more of the following means for the settlement of disputes relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention:
- (a) The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea constituted in accordance with annex VI;
  - (b) The International Court of Justice;
  - (c) An arbitral tribunal constituted in accordance with annex VII;
- (d) A special arbitral tribunal constituted in accordance with annex VIII for one or more of the categories of disputes specified therein.

- 2. Any declaration made under paragraph 1 shall not affect or be affected by the obligation of a State Party to accept the jurisdiction of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea to the extent and in the manner provided for in section 6 of Part XI.
- 3. A State Party, which is a party to a dispute not covered by a declaration in force, shall be deemed to have accepted arbitration in accordance with annex VII.
- 4. If the parties to a dispute have accepted the same procedure for the settlement of such dispute, it may be submitted only to that procedure, unless the parties otherwise agree.
- 5. If the parties to the dispute have not accepted the same procedure for the settlement of such dispute, it may be submitted only to arbitration in accordance with annex VII, unless the parties otherwise agree.
- 6. Any declaration made under this article shall remain in force until three months after notice of revocation has been deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.
- 7. When a dispute has been submitted to a court or tribunal having jurisdiction under this article, a new declaration or notice of revocation of a declaration or expiration of a declaration, shall not affect in any way the proceedings so pending, unless the parties otherwise agree.
- 8. Declarations and notices referred to in this article shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations, who shall transmit copies thereof to the States Parties.

#### Article 288 Competence

- l. Any court or tribunal provided for in article 287 shall have jurisdiction in any dispute relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention which is submitted to it in accordance with the provisions of this Part.
- 2. Any court or tribunal provided for in article 287 shall have jurisdiction in any dispute relating to the interpretation or application of an international agreement related to the purposes of this Convention, which is submitted to it in accordance with the provisions of such agreement.
- 3. The Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea constituted in accordance with annex VI, or an arbitral tribunal shall have jurisdiction in any matter provided for in section 6 of Part XI which is submitted to it in accordance with that Part.
- 4. Any disagreement as to whether a court or tribunal has jurisdiction, shall be settled by the decision of that court or tribunal.

#### Article 289 Expert advice and assistance

In any dispute involving scientific or technical matters, a court or tribunal exercising jurisdiction under this section may, at the request of a party to the dispute or on its own initiative, and in consultation with the parties, select not less than two scientific or technical experts from the appropriate list prepared in accordance with article 2 of annex VIII, to sit with such court or tribunal but without the right to vote.

#### Article 290 Provisional measures

- l. If a dispute has been duly submitted to any court or tribunal which considers <u>prima facie</u> that it has jurisdiction under this Part, or section 6 of Part XI, such court or tribunal shall have the power to prescribe any provisional measures which it considers appropriate under the circumstances to preserve the respective rights of the parties to the dispute or to prevent serious harm to the marine environment, pending final adjudication.
- 2. Any provisional measures under this article may only be prescribed, modified or revoked upon the request of a party to the dispute and after giving the parties an opportunity to be heard. Notice of any provisional measures, or of their modification or revocation, shall be given forthwith by the court or tribunal to the parties to the dispute and to such other States Parties as it considers appropriate.
- 3. Pending the constitution of an arbitral or special arbitral tribunal to which a dispute has been submitted under this section, any court or tribunal agreed upon by the parties or, failing such agreement within two weeks from the date of the request for provisional measures, the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea or, when appropriate, its Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber, shall have the power to prescribe provisional measures in conformity with paragraphs 1 and 2, if it considers prima facie that the tribunal to which the dispute has been submitted would have jurisdiction and that the urgency of the situation so requires. As soon as it has been constituted, the tribunal to which the dispute has been submitted may affirm, modify or revoke such provisional measures, acting in conformity with paragraphs 1 and 2.
- 4. As soon as the circumstances justifying the provisional measure have changed or ceased to exist, such provisional measures may be modified or revoked.
- 5. Any provisional measures prescribed or modified under this article shall be promptly complied with by the parties to the dispute.

### Article 291 Access

- 1. All the dispute settlement procedures specified in this Part shall be open to States Parties.
- 2. The dispute settlement procedures specified in this Part shall be open to entities other than States Parties as provided for in section 6 of Part XI.

### Article 292 Prompt release of vessels

1. Where the authorities of a State Party have detained a vessel flying the flag of another State Party and it is alleged that the coastal State has failed, neglected or refused to comply with the relevant provisions of this Convention for the prompt release of the vessel or its crew upon the posting of a reasonable bond or other financial security, the question of release from detention may be brought before any court or tribunal agreed upon by the parties. Failing such agreement within 10 days from the time of detention, the question of release may be brought before any court or tribunal accepted by the detaining State under article 287 or before the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea, unless the parties otherwise agree.

- 2. An application for such release may only be brought by or on behalf of the flag State of the vessel.
- 3. The question of release shall be dealt with promptly by such court or tribunal which shall deal only with the question of release, without prejudice to the merits of any case before the appropriate domestic forum against the vessel, its owner or its crew. The authorities of the detaining State shall remain competent to release the vessel or its crew at any time.
- 4. The decision of such court or tribunal as to the release of the vessel or its crew shall be promptly complied with by the authorities of the detaining State upon the posting of the bond or other financial security determined by the court or tribunal.

#### Article 293 Applicable law

- 1. The court or tribunal having jurisdiction under this section shall apply this Convention and other rules of international law not incompatible with this Convention.
- 2. If the parties to a dispute so agree, the court or tribunal having jurisdiction under this section shall make its decision ex aequo et bono.

### Article 294 Preliminary proceedings

- l. A court or tribunal provided for in article 287 to which an application is made in respect of a dispute referred to in article 297 shall determine at the request of a party, or may determine on its own initiative, whether the claim constitutes an abuse of legal process or whether it is established <u>prima facie</u> to be well founded. If the court or tribunal determines that the claim constitutes an abuse of legal process or is <u>prima facie</u> unfounded, it shall take no further action in the case.
- 2. On receipt of such an application, the court or tribunal shall immediately notify the other party or parties to the dispute of the application, and shall fix a reasonable time-limit within which the other party or parties may request such a determination.
- 3. Nothing in paragraphs 1 or 2 affects the right of any party to a dispute to raise preliminary objections in accordance with the applicable rules of procedure.

#### Article 295 Exhaustion of local remedies

Any dispute between States Parties relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention may be submitted to the procedures provided for in this section only after local remedies have been exhausted as required by international law.

### Article 296 Finality and binding force of decisions

- 1. Any decision rendered or measure prescribed by a court or tribunal having jurisdiction under this section shall be final and shall be complied with by all the parties to the dispute.
- 2. Any such decision or measure shall have no binding force except between the parties and in respect of that particular dispute.

#### SECTION 3

#### LIMITATIONS AND EXCEPTIONS TO APPLICABILITY OF SECTION 2

### Article 297 Limitations on applicability of section 2

- 1. Disputes relating to the interpretation or application of this Convention with regard to the exercise by a coastal State of its sovereign rights or jurisdiction provided for in this Convention, shall be subject to the procedures specified in section 2 in the following cases:
- (a) When it is alleged that a coastal State has acted in contravention of the provisions of this Convention in regard to the freedoms and rights of navigation or overflight or of the laying of submarine cables and pipelines and other internationally lawful uses of the sea specified in article 58; or
- (b) When it is alleged that any State in exercising the aforementioned freedoms, rights or uses has acted in contravention of the provisions of this Convention or of laws or regulations established by the coastal State in conformity with this Convention and other rules of international law not incompatible with this Convention; or
- (c) When it is alleged that a coastal State has acted in contravention of specified international rules and standards for the protection and preservation of the marine environment which are applicable to the coastal State and which have been established by this Convention or by a competent international organization or diplomatic conference acting in accordance with this Convention.
- 2. (a) Disputes relating to the interpretation or application of the provisions of this Convention with regard to marine scientific research shall be settled in accordance with section 2, except that the coastal State shall not be obliged to accept the submission to such settlement any dispute arising out of:
  - (i) the exercise by the coastal State of a right or discretion in accordance with article 246; or
  - (ii) a decision by the coastal State to order suspension or cessation of a research project in accordance with article 253.
- (b) Disputes arising from an allegation by the researching State that with respect to a specific project the coastal State is not exercising its rights under articles 246 and 253 in a manner compatible with the provisions of this Convention shall be submitted, at the request of either party, to the conciliation procedure specified in section 2 of annex V, provided that the conciliation commission shall not call in question the exercise by the coastal State of its discretion to designate specific areas as referred to in paragraph 6 of article 246 or of its discretion to withhold consent in accordance with paragraph 5 of article 246.
- 3. (a) Disputes relating to the interpretation or application of the provisions of this Convention with regard to fisheries shall be settled in accordance with section 2, except that the coastal State shall not be obliged to accept the submission to such settlement of any dispute relating to its sovereign rights with respect to the living resources in the exclusive economic zone or their exercise, including its discretionary powers for determining the allowable catch, its harvesting capacity, the allocation of surpluses to other States and the terms and conditions established in its conservation and management regulations;

- (b) Where no settlement has been reached by recourse to the provisions of section 1, a dispute shall be submitted to the conciliation procedure specified in section 2 of annex V, at the request of any party to the dispute, when it is alleged that:
  - (i) a coastal State has manifestly failed to comply with its obligations to ensure through proper conservation and management measures that the maintenance of the living resources in the exclusive economic zone is not seriously endangered;
  - (ii) a coastal State has arbitrarily refused to determine, upon the request of another State, the allowable catch and its capacity to harvest the living resources with respect to stocks which that other State is interested in fishing;
  - (iii) a coastal State has arbitrarily refused to allocate to any State, under the provisions of articles 62, 69 and 70 and under the terms and conditions established by the coastal State consistent with this Convention, the whole or part of the surplus it has declared to exist.
- (c) In any case the conciliation commission shall not substitute its discretion for that of the coastal State;
- (d) The report of the conciliation commission shall be communicated to the appropriate international organizations;
- (e) In negotiating agreements pursuant to articles 69 and 70 the parties, unless they otherwise agree, shall include a clause on measures which the parties shall take in order to minimize the possibility of a disagreement concerning the interpretation or application of the agreement, and on how the parties should proceed if a disagreement nevertheless arises.

#### Article 298 Optional exceptions

- l. Without prejudice to the obligations arising under section 1, a State Party when signing, ratifying or otherwise expressing its consent to be bound by this Convention, or at any time thereafter, may declare that it does not accept any one or more of the procedures for the settlement of disputes specified in section 2 with respect to one or more of the following categories of disputes:
- (a) (i) Disputes concerning the interpretation or application of articles 15, 74 and 83 relating to sea boundary delimitations, or those involving historic bays or titles, provided that the State having made such a declaration shall, when such a dispute arises subsequent to the entry into force of this Convention and where no agreement within a reasonable period of time is reached in negotiations between the parties, at the request of any party to the dispute, accept submission of the matter to conciliation specified in section 2 of annex V; and provided further that there shall be excluded from such submission any dispute that necessarily involves the concurrent consideration of any unsettled dispute concerning sovereignty or other rights over continental or insular land territory;

- (ii) after the Conciliation Commission has presented its report, which shall state the reasons on which it is based, the parties shall negotiate an agreement on the basis of that report; if these negotiations do not result in an agreement, the parties shall, by mutual consent, submit the question to one of the procedures specified in section 2 of part XV, unless the parties otherwise agree;
- (iii) the provisions of this subparagraph shall not apply to any sea boundary dispute finally settled by an arrangement between the parties, or to any such dispute which is to be settled in accordance with a bilateral or multilateral agreement binding upon those parties.
- (b) Disputes concerning military activities, including military activities by government vessels and aircraft engaged in non-commercial service, and disputes concerning law enforcement activities in regard to the exercise of sovereign rights or jurisdiction excluded from the jurisdiction of a court or tribunal under article 297, paragraphs 2 and 3;
- (c) Disputes in respect of which the Security Council of the United Nations is exercising the functions assigned to it by the Charter of the United Nations, unless the Security-Council decides to remove the matter from its agenda or calls upon the parties to settle it by the means provided for in this Convention.
- 2. A State Party which has made a declaration under paragraph 1 may at any time withdraw it, or agree to submit a dispute excluded by such declaration to any procedure specified in this Convention.
- 3. Any State Party which has made a declaration under paragraph 1 shall not be entitled to submit any dispute falling within the excepted category of disputes to any procedure in this Convention as against any other State Party, without the consent of that party.
- 4. If one of the States Parties has made a declaration under paragraph 1 (a), any other State Party may submit any dispute falling within an excepted category against the declarant party to the procedure specified in such declaration.
- 5. When a dispute has been submitted to any procedure in accordance with this article, a new declaration, or the withdrawal of a declaration, shall not affect in any way the proceedings so pending, unless the parties otherwise agree.
- 6. Declarations and withdrawals under this article shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations, who shall transmit copies thereof to the States Parties.

#### Article 299 Right of the parties to agree upon procedure

- 1. Any dispute which has been excluded under article 297 or excepted by a declaration in accordance with article 298 from the dispute settlement procedures provided in section 2 of this Part may only be submitted to such procedures by agreement of the parties to the dispute.
- 2. Nothing in this section shall impair the right of the parties to the dispute to agree to or decide upon some other procedure for the settlement of such dispute or to reach an amicable settlement.

#### PART XVI

#### GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### Article 300 Good faith and abuse of rights

The States Parties to this Convention undertake to discharge in good faith the obligations entered into in conformity with this Convention, and to exercise the rights, jurisdictions and freedoms recognized in this Convention in a manner which would not constitute an abuse of rights.

#### Article 301 Peaceful uses of the seas

In exercising their rights and performing their duties in accordance with the provisions of this Convention, all States Parties shall refrain from any threat or use of force against the territorial integrity or political independence of any State, or in any other manner inconsistent with the principles of international law embodied in the Charter of the United Nations.

### Article 302 Disclosure of information

Without prejudice to the right of any State Party to resort to the procedures for the settlement of disputes provided in this Convention, nothing in this Convention shall be deemed to require a State Party, in the fulfilment of its obligations under the relevant provisions of this Convention, to supply information the disclosure of which is contrary to the essential interests of its security.

### Article 303 Archaeological objects and objects of historical origin found at sea

- 1. States have the duty to protect archaeological objects and objects of historical origin found at sea, and shall co-operate for this purpose.
- 2. In order to control traffic in such objects, the coastal State may, in applying article 33, presume that their removal from the sea-bed in the area referred to in that article without the approval of the coastal State would result in an infringement within its territory or territorial sea of the regulations of the coastal State referred to in that article.
- 3. Nothing in this article affects the rights of identifiable owners, the law of salvage or other rules of admiralty, or laws and practices with respect to cultural exchanges.

4. This article is without prejudice to other international agreements and rules of international law regarding the protection of archaeological objects and objects of historical origin.

### Article 304 Responsibility and liability for damage

The provisions of this Convention regarding responsibility and liability for damage are without prejudice to the application of existing rules and the development of further rules regarding responsibility and liability under international law.

PART XVII

FINAL CLAUSES

#### Article 305 Signature

This Convention shall be open for signature by ... until ... (last day of the twenty-fourth month after the opening date for signature) at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Republic of Venezuela and also, as from ... (first day of the seventh month after the opening date for signature) until ... (last day of the twenty-fourth month after the opening date for signature), at United Nations Headquarters in New York.

#### Article 306 Ratification

This Convention is subject to ratification. The instruments of ratification shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

#### Article 307 Accession

This Convention shall remain open for accession by ... The instruments of accession shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

#### Article 508 Entry into force

- 1. This Convention shall enter into force 12 months after the date of deposit of the sixtieth instrument of ratification or accession.
- 2. For each State ratifying or acceding to this Convention after the deposit of the sixtieth instrument of ratification or accession, the Convention shall enter into force on the thirtieth day following the deposit of its instrument of ratification or accession, subject to paragraph 1.
- 3. The Assembly of the Authority shall meet on the date of entry into force of this Convention and shall elect the Council of the Authority. The first Council shall be constituted in a manner consistent with the purpose of article 161 if the provisions of that article cannot be strictly applied.  $\underline{1}$ /
- 4. The rules, regulations and procedures drafted by the Preparatory Commission shall apply provisionally pending their formal adoption by the Authority in accordance with Part XI. 2/

<sup>1/</sup> The second sentence of this article was referred by the President to the Chairman of the First Committee who replied on 13 August 1980 requesting that "there be no modifications in the text pending further negotiations concerning Article 161".

<sup>2/</sup> This paragraph will nave to be considered in light of further work on the Preparatory Commission.

# Article 309 1/ Reservations and exceptions

No reservations or exceptions may be made to this Convention unless expressly permitted by other articles of this Convention.

# Article 310 1/ Declarations and statements

Article 303 shall not preclude a State Party, at the time of signing, ratifying or acceding to this Convention, from making declarations or statements, however phrased or named, with a view, inter alia, to the harmonization of national laws and regulations with the provisions of this Convention, provided that such declarations or statements do not purport to exclude or to modify the legal effect of the provisions of this Convention in their application to that State Party.

### Article 311 Relation to other conventions and international agreements

- 1. This Convention shall prevail, as between States Parties, over the Geneva Conventions on the Law of the Sea of 1958.
- 2. This Convention shall not alter the rights and obligations of States Parties which arise from other agreements compatible with this Convention and which do not affect the enjoyment by other States Parties of their rights or the performance of their obligations under this Convention.
- 3. Two or more States Parties to this Convention may conclude agreements modifying or suspending its provisions, applicable solely to the relations between them, provided that such agreements do not relate to those provisions of this Convention derogation from which is incompatible with the effective execution of the object and purpose of the Convention and provided further that such agreements shall not affect the application of the basic principles embodied in this Convention and that the provisions of such agreements do not affect the enjoyment by other States Parties of their rights or the performance of their obligations under this Convention.
- 4. States Parties intending to conclude any agreement referred to in paragraph 3 shall notify other States Parties through the depositary of this Convention of their intention to conclude the agreement and of the modification to the Convention for which it provides.
- 5. This article shall not affect international agreements expressly permitted or preserved by other articles of this Convention.
- 6. The States Parties to this Convention agree that there can be no amendments to the basic principle relating to the common heritage of mankind set forth in article 136 and that they shall not be party to any agreement in derogation thereof.

<sup>1/</sup> This article is based on the assumption that the Convention will be adopted by consensus. In addition, it is recognized that the article can be regarded only as provisional pending the conclusion of discussions on outstanding substantive issues such as that relating to the delimitation of maritime zones as between adjacent and opposite States and to settlement of disputes thereon, where the final solution might include provision for reservations.

### Article 312 Amendment

- 1. After the expiry of a period of 10 years from the date of entry into force of this Convention, a State Party may, by written communication addressed to the Secretary-General of the United Nations, propose specific amendments to this Convention, other than those relating to activities in the Area, and request the convening of a conference to consider such proposed amendments. The Secretary-General shall circulate such communication to all States Parties. If, within 12 months from the date of such communication not less than one-half of the States Parties reply favourably to the request, the Secretary-General shall convene the conference.
- 2. The decision-making procedure applicable at the amendment conference shall be the same as that applicable at the Third United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sca unless otherwise decided by the conference. The conference should make every affort to reach agreement on any amendments by way of consensus and there should be no voting on such matters until all efforts at consensus have been exhausted.

### Amendment by simplified procedure

- 1. A State Party may propose by written communication addressed to the Secretary-General of the United Nations, an amendment to this Convention, other than a mendment relating to activities in the Area, to be adopted by a simplified procedure without convening a conference.
- 2. The Secretary-General of the United Nations shall circulate communications provided for in paragraph 1 to all States Parties.
- 3. If, at any time within a period of 12 months thereafter, a State Party objects to the proposed amendment or to the proposal for its adoption by the implified procedure, it shall be considered rejected. The Secretary-General of the inited Nations shall immediately notify all States Parties accordingly.
- 4. If, on the expiry of 12 months from the date of the circulation of the communication, no State Party has objected to the proposed amendment or to the proposal for its adoption by a simplified procedure, the proposed amendment shall be considered adopted. The Secretary-General shall notify all States Parties that the proposed amendment has been adopted.

# Article 314 Amendments to the provisions of the Convention relating exclusively to activities in the area

- 1. A State Party may, by written communication addressed to the Secretary-General of the Authority, propose an amendment to the provisions of this Convention relating actualized to activities in the Area, including Section 4 of Annex VI. The secretary-General shall circulate such communication to all States Parties. The roposed amendment shall be subject to approval by the Assembly following its approval by the Council. Representatives of States Parties shall have full powers o consider and approve the proposed amendment. The proposed amendment, as approved by the Council and the Assembly, shall be considered adopted.
- 2. Before approving any amendment under paragraph 1, the Council and the assembly shall ensure that the amendment does not prejudice the system of exploration and exploitation pending the Review Conference in accordance with article 155.

# Article 315 Signature, ratification of, accession to and authentic texts of amendments

- 1. Amendments adopted in accordance with this Convention shall be open for signature by States Parties to this Convention for 12 months from the date of adoption, at United Nations Headquarters in New York, unless otherwise decided in the amendment itself.
- 2. The provisions of articles 306, 307 and 320 shall apply to all amendments to this Convention.

# Article 316 Entry into force of amendments

- 1. Amendments to this Convention, other than those referred to in paragraph 4 shall enter into force, for the States Parties ratifying or acceding to them, on the thirtieth day following the deposit of instruments of ratification or accession by two-thirds of the States Parties or by 60 States Parties, whichever is greater.
- 2. An amendment may provide that a larger number of ratifications or accessions shall be required for its entry into force than are required by this article.
- 3. For each State Party ratifying or acceding to amendments referred to in paragraph 1 after the deposit of the required number of instruments of ratification or accession, the amendments shall enter into force on the thirtieth day following the deposit of its instrument of ratification or accession. Such amendments shall not affect the enjoyment by other States Parties of their rights or the performance of their obligations under this Convention.
- 4. Any State which becomes a Party to this Convention after the entry into force of amendments in accordance with paragraph 1 shall, failing an expression of a different intention by that State:
  - (a) be considered as a Party to this Convention as amended; and
- (b) be considered as a Party to the unamended Convention in relation to any State Party to this Convention not bound by the amendments.
- 5. Any amendment relating exclusively to activities in the Area and any amendment to Annex VI shall enter into force for all States Parties one year following the deposit of instruments of ratification or accession by three-fourths of the States Parties, except as provided in article 155, paragraph 4.
- 6. Any State which becomes a Party to this Convention after the entry into force of amendments in accordance with paragraph 5 shall be considered as a Party to this Convention as amended in this regard.

#### Article 317 Denunciation

1. A State Party may, by written notification addressed to the Secretary-General of the United Nations, denounce the Convention and may indicate reasons therefor. Failure to give reasons shall not affect the validity of the denunciation. The denunciation shall take effect on the expiry of one year after the date of receipt of the notification, unless the notification specifies a later date.

- 2. A State shall not be discharged from the financial and contractual obligations which accrued while it was a Party to this Convention by reason of the denunciation, nor shall the denunciation affect any right, obligation or legal situation of that State created through the execution of this Convention prior to its termination for the State.
- 3. The denunciation shall not in any way affect the duty of any State Party to fulfil any obligation embodied in this Convention to which it would be subject under international law independently of this Convention.

#### Article 318 Status of annexes

The annexes form an integral part of this Convention and, unless expressly provided otherwise, a reference to this Convention includes a reference to its annexes.

#### Article 319 Depositary

- 1. The Secretary-General of the United Nations shall be the depositary of this Convention and amendments thereto.
- 2. In addition to his functions as depositary, the Secretary-General of the United Nations shall:
- (a) report to all States Parties, the Authority and competent international organizations on issues of a general nature that have arisen with respect to this Convention;
- (b) notify the Authority of ratifications of and accessions to this Convention and amendments thereto, as well as of denunciations of this Convention;
- (c) notify States Parties of agreements in accordance with article 305, paragraph 4;
- (d) circulate amendments adopted in accordance with this Convention to States Parties for ratification or accession;
- (e) convene necessary meetings of States Parties in accordance with this Convention.

#### Article 320 Authentic texts

The original of this Convention, of which the Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish texts are equally authentic, shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

IN VITNESS VIEREOF, the undersigned plenipotentiaries, being duly authorized thereto ..., have signed this Convention.

DOME AT CARACAS, this ... day of ..., one thousand nine hundred and eighty ...

#### Transitional provision

- 1. The rights recognized or established by this Convention to the resources of a territory whose people have not attained either full independence or some other self-governing status recognized by the United Nations, or a territory under foreign occupation or colonial domination, or a United Nations Trust Territory, or a territory administered by the United Nations, shall be vested in the inhabitants of that territory, to be exercised by them for their own benefit and in accordance with their own needs and requirements.
- 2. Where a dispute over the sovereignty of a territory under foreign occupation or colonial domination exists, in respect of which the United Nations has recommended specific means of solution, rights referred to in paragraph 1 shall not be exercised except with the prior consent of the parties to the dispute until such dispute is settled in accordance with the purposes and principles of the Charter of the United Nations.
- 3. A metropolitan or foreign power administering, occupying or purporting to administer or occupy a territory may not in any case exercise, profit, or benefit from or in any way infringe the rights referred to in paragraph 1.
- 4. References in this article to a territory include continental territories and islands.

#### ANNEXES

#### ANNEX I

#### Highly migratory species

- 1. Albacore tuna: Thunnus alalunga.
- 2. Bluefin tuna: Thunnus thynnus.
- 3. Bigeye tuna: Thunnus obcsus.
- 4. Skipjack tuna: Katsuwonus pelamis.
- 5. Yellowfin tuna: Thunnus albacares.
- 6. Blackfin tuna: Thunnus atlanticus.
- 7. Little tuna: Euthynnus alletteratus; Euthynnus affinis.
- 8. Frigate mackerel: Auxis thazard; Auxis rochei.
- 9. Pomfrets: Family Bramidae.
- 10. Marlins: Tetrapturus angustirostris; Tetrapturus belone; Tetrapturus pfluegeri; Tetrapturus albidus; Tetrapturus audax; Tetrapturus georgei; Makaira mazara; Makaira indica; Makaira nigricans.
  - 11. Sail-fishes: Istiophorus platypterus; Istiophorus albicans.
  - 12. Swordfish: Xiphias gladius.
- 13. Sauries: Scomberesox saurus; Cololabis saira; Cololabis adocetus; Scomberesox saurus scombroides.
  - 14. Dolphin: Coryphaena hippurus; Coryphaena equiselis.
- 15. Oceanic sharks: <u>Hexanchus griseus</u>; <u>Cetorhinus maximus</u>; <u>Family Alopiidae</u>; <u>Rhincodon typus</u>; <u>Family Carcharhinidae</u>; <u>Family Sphyrnidae</u>; <u>Family Isurida</u>.
- 16. Cetaceans: Family Physeteridae; Family Balaenopteridae; Family Balaenidae; Family Eschrichtiidae; Family Monodontidae; Family Ziphiidae; Family Delphinidae.
  - 17. Southern bluefin tuna: Thunnus maccoyii.

#### ANNEX II

Commission on the Limits of the Continental Shelf

#### Article 1

In accordance with the provisions of article 76 of Part VI of this Convention, a Commission on the Limits of the Continental Shelf beyond 200 nautical miles shall be established in conformity with the following articles.

#### Article 2

- 1. The Commission shall consist of 21 members who shall be experts in the field of geology, geophysics or hydrography, elected by States Parties to this Convention from among their nationals, having due regard to the need to ensure equitable geographical representation, who shall serve in their personal capacities.
- 2. The initial election shall be held as soon as possible but in any case within 18 months after the date of entry into force of this Convention. At least three months before the date of each election, the Secretary-General of the United Nations shall address a letter to the States Parties, inviting the submission of nominations, after appropriate regional consultations, within three months. The Secretary-General shall prepare a list in alphabetical order of all persons thus nominated, and shall submit it to all the States Parties.
- 3. Elections of the members of the Commission shall be held at a meeting of States Parties convened by the Secretary-General at United Nations Headquarters. At that meeting, for which two thirds of the States Parties shall constitute a quorum, the persons elected to the Commission shall be those nominees who obtain a two-thirds majority of the votes of the representatives of States Parties present and voting. Not less than three members shall be elected from each geographical region.
- 4. The members of the Commission shall be elected for a term of five years. They shall be eligible for re-election.
- 5. The tate Party which submitted the nomination of the member shall defray the expenses of a member of the Commission while such member is in performance of Commission duties. The relevant coastal State shall defray the expenses incurred in respect of the advice referred to in article 3, paragraph 1 (b). The secretariat of the Commission shall be provided by the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

#### Article 3

- 1. The functions of the Commission shall be:
- (a) to consider the data and other material submitted by coastal States concerning the outer limits of the continental shelf in areas where those limits extend beyond 200 nautical miles, and to make recommendations in accordance with article 76 of Part VI of this Convention;
- (b) to provide scientific and technical advice, if requested by the coastal State concerned, during the preparation of the data referred to in subparagraph (a).

2. The Commission may co-operate, to the extent considered necessary and useful, with the Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission of UNESCO, the International Hydrographic Organization and other competent international organizations with a view to exchanging scientific and technical information which might be of assistance in discharging the Commission's responsibilities.

#### Article 4

Where a coastal State intends to establish, in accordance with article 76 of Part VI of this Convention, the seaward boundary of its continental shelf beyond 200 nautical miles, the coastal State concerned shall submit particulars of such boundary to the Commission along with supporting scientific and technical data as soon as possible but in any case within 10 years of the entry into force of this Convention for that State. The coastal State shall at the same time give the names of any Commission members who have provided it with scientific and technical advice.

#### Article 5

Unless the Commission decides otherwise, the Commission shall function by way of sub-commissions composed of seven members, appointed in a balanced manner taking into account the specific elements of each submission by a coastal State. Nationals of the coastal State making the submission who are members of the Commission and any Commission member who has assisted a coastal State by providing scientific and technical advice with respect to the delineation shall not be a member of the sub-commission dealing with that submission but has the right to participate as a member in the proceedings of the Commission concerning said submission. The coastal State which has made a submission to the Commission may send its representatives to participate in the relevant proceedings without the right to vote.

#### Article 6

- 1. The sub-commission shall submit its recommendations to the Commission.
- 2. Approval by the Commission of the recommendations of the sub-commission shall be by a majority of two thirds of Commission members present and voting.
- 3. The recommendations of the Commission shall be submitted in writing to the coastal State which made the submission and to the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

#### Article 7

Coastal States shall establish the seaward limits of the continental shelf in conformity with the provisions of article 76, paragraph 8, of Part VI of this Convention and in accordance with the appropriate national procedures.

#### Article 8

In the case of disagreement by the coastal State with the recommendations of the Commission, the coastal State shall, within a reasonable time, make a revised or new submission to the Commission.

#### Article 9

The actions of the Commission shall not prejudice matters relating to delimitation of boundaries between States with adjacent or opposite coasts.

#### ANNEX III

Basic conditions of prospecting, exploration and exploitation

# Article 1 Title to minerals

Title to minerals shall pass upon recovery in accordance with this Convention.

#### Article 2 Prospecting

- 1. (a) The Authority shall encourage the conduct of prospecting in the Area.
- (b) Prospecting shall be conducted only after the Authority has received a satisfactory written undertaking that the proposed prospector shall comply with this Convention and the relevant rules and regulations of the Authority concerning protection of the marine environment, co-operation in training programmes according to articles 143 and 144 of Part XI of this Convention and accepts verification by the Authority of compliance. The proposed prospector shall, together with the undertaking, notify the Authority of the broad area or areas in which prospecting is to take place.
- (c) Prospecting may be carried out by more than one prospector in the same area or areas simultaneously.
- 2. Prospecting shall not confer any preferential, proprietary, exclusive or any other rights on the prospector with respect to the resources. A prospector shall however, be entitled to recover a reasonable amount of resources of the Area to be used for sampling.

# Article 3 Exploration and exploitation

- 1. The Enterprise, States Parties, and the other entities referred to in article 153, paragraph 2 (b), of Part XI of this Convention, may apply to the Authority for approval of plans of work covering activities of the Area.
- 2. The Enterprise may apply with respect to any part of the Area, but applications by others with respect to reserved areas are subject to the additional requirements of article 9.
- 3. Exploration and exploitation shall be carried out only in areas specified in plans of work referred to in article 153, paragraph 3, of Part XI of this Convention and approved by the Authority in accordance with the provisions of this annex and the relevant rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.
  - 4. Every plan of work approved by the Authority shall:
- (a) Be in strict conformity with this Convention and the rules and regulations of the Authority;

- (b) Ensure control by the Authority of activities in the Area in accordance with article 153, paragraph 4, of Part XI of this Convention;
- (c) Confer on the operator exclusive rights for the exploration and exploitation of the specified categories of resources in the area covered by the plan of work in accordance with the rules and regulations of the Authority. If the applicant presents a plan of work for one of the two stages only, the plan of work may confer exclusive rights with respect to such a stage.
- 5. Except for plans of work proposed by the Enterprise, each plan of work shall take the form of a contract to be signed by the Luthority and the operator or operators upon approval of the plan of work by the Luthority.

# <u>Article 4</u> Qualifications of applicants

- 1. Applicants, other than the Enterprise, shall be qualified if they have the nationality or control and sponsorship required by article 153, paragraph 2 (b), of Part XI of this Convention and if they follow the procedures and neet the qualification standards established by the Authority by means of rules, regulations and procedures.
- 2. Sponsorship by the State Party of which the applicant is a national shall be sufficient unless the applicant has more than one nationality, as in the case of a partnership or consortium of entities from several States, in which event all States Parties involved shall sponsor the application, or unless the applicant is effectively controlled by another State Party or its nationals, in which event both States Parties shall sponsor the application. The criteria and procedures for implementation of the sponsorship requirements shall be set forth in the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.
- 3. The sponsoring State or States shall, pursuant to article 139 of Part XI of this Convention, have the responsibility to ensure, within their legal systems, that a contractor so sponsored shall carry out activities in the free in conformity with its obligations under this Convention and the terms of its contract. I sponsoring State shall not, however, be liable for damage caused by any failure of a contractor sponsored by it to comply with its obligations if that State Party has adopted laws and regulations and taken administrative measures which are, within the framework of its legal system, reasonably appropriate for securing compliance by persons under its jurisdiction.
- 4. Except as provided in paragraph 6, such qualification standards shall relate to the financial and technical capabilities of the applicant and his performance under previous contracts with the Authority.
- 5. The procedures for assessing the qualifications of States Parties which are applicants shall take into account their character as States.
- 6. The qualification standards shall require that every applicant, without exception, shall as part of his application undertake:
- (a) To accept as enforceable and comply with the applicable obligations created by the provisions of Part XI, rules and regulations of the Authority, decisions of the organs of the Authority, and terms of his contracts with the Authority;

- (b) to accept control by the Authority of activities in the Area, as authorized by this Convention;
- (c) to provide the Authority with a written assurance that his obligations under the contract will be fulfilled in good faith;
- (d) to comply with the provisions on the transfer of technology set forth in article 5.

# <u>irticle 5</u> Transfer of technology

- 1. When submitting a proposed plan of work, every applicant shall make available to the Authority a general description of the equipment and methods to be used in carrying out activities in the Area, as well as other relevant non-proprietary information about the characteristics of such technology, and information as to where such technology is available.
- 2. Every operator under an approved plan of work shall inform the Authority of revisions in the description and information required by paragraph I whenever a substantial technological change or innovation is introduced.
- 3. Every contract for the conduct of activities in the Area entered into by the Authority shall contain the following undertakings by the operator:
- (a) To make available to the Enterprise, if and when the Authority shall so request and on fair and reasonable commercial terms and conditions, the technology which he uses in carrying out activities in the Area under the contract and which he is legally entitled to transfer. This shall be done by means of licence or other appropriate arrangements which the operator shall negotiate with the Enterprise and which shall be set forth in a special agreement supplementary to the contract. This commitment may be invoked only if the Enterprise finds that it is unable to obtain the same or equally efficient and useful technology on the open market and on fair and reasonable commercial terms and conditions;
- (b) To obtain a written assurance from the owner of any technology not covered under subparagraph (a) that the operator uses in carrying out activities in the Area under the contract and which is not generally available on the open market that the owner will, if and when the Authority so requests, make available to the Enterprise to the same extent as made available to the operator, that technology under licence or other appropriate arrangements and on fair and reasonable commercial terms and conditions. If such assurance is not obtained, the technology in question shall not be used by the operator in carrying out activities in the Area;

- (c) To acquire, if and when requested to do so by the Enterprise and whenever it is possible to do so without substantial cost to the contractor, a legally binding and enforceable right to transfer to the Enterprise in accordance with subparagraph (a) any technology he uses in carrying out activities in the Area under the contract which he is not legally entitled to transfer and which is not generally available on the open market. In cases where there is a substantial corporate relationship between the operator and the owner of the technology, the closeness of this relationship and the degree of control or influence shall be relevant to the determination whether all feasible measures have been taken. In cases where the operator exercises effective control over the owner, failure to acquire the legal rights from the owner shall be considered relevant to the applicant's qualifications for any subsequent proposed plan of work;
- (d) To facilitate the acquisition by the Enterprise under licence or other appropriate arrangements and on fair and reasonable commercial terms and conditions any technology covered by subparagraph (b) should the Enterprise decide to negotiate directly with the owner of the technology and request such facilitation;
- (e) To take the same measures as those prescribed in subparagraphs (a), (b), (c) and (d) for the benefit of a developing State or group of developing States which has applied for a contract under article 9, provided that these measures shall be limited to the exploitation of the part of the area proposed by the contractor which has been reserved pursuant to article 8 and provided that activities under the contract sought by the developing State or group of developing States would not involve transfer of technology to a third State or the nationals of a third State. Obligations under this provision shall only apply with respect to any given contractor where technology has not been requested or transferred by him to the Enterprise.
- 4. Disputes concerning the undertakings required by paragraph 3, like other provisions of the contracts, shall be subject to compulsory dispute settlement in accordance with Part XI, and monetary penalties, suspension, or termination of contract as provided in article 18. Disputes as to whether offers made by the contractor are within the range of fair and reasonable commercial terms and conditions may be submitted by either party to binding commercial arbitration in accordance with the UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules or other arbitration rules as may be prescribed in the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority. In any case in which the finding is negative, the contractor shall be given 45 days to revise his offer to bring it within that range before the Authority makes any determinations with respect to violation of the contract and the imposition of penalties, as provided in article 18.
- 5. In the event that the Enterprise is unable to obtain appropriate technology on fair and reasonable commercial terms and conditions to commence in a timely manner the recovery and processing of minerals from the Area, either the Council or the Assembly may convene a group of States Parties composed of those which are

engaged in activities in the Area, those which have sponsored entities which are engaged in activities in the Area and other States Parties having access to such technology. This group shall consult together and shall take effective measures to ensure that such technology is made available to the Enterprise on fair and reasonable commercial terms and conditions. Each such State Party shall take all feasible measures to this end within its own legal system.

- 6. In the case of joint ventures with the Enterprise, technology transfer will be in accordance with the terms of the joint venture agreement.
- 7. The undertakings required by paragraph 3 shall be included in each contract for the conduct of activities in the Area until 10 years after the Enterprise has begun commercial production of minerals from the resources of the Area and may be invoked during that period.
- 8. For the purposes of this article, "technology" means the specialized equipment and technical know-how, including manuals, designs, operating instructions, training and technical advice and assistance, necessary to assemble, maintain and operate a viable system and the legal right to use these items for that purpose on a non-exclusive basis.

# <u>Article 6</u> <u>Approval of plans of work submitted by applicants</u>

- 1. Six months after the entry into force of this Convention, and thereafter each fourth month, the Authority shall take up for consideration proposed plans of work.
- 2. When considering an application for a contract with respect to activities in the Area, the Authority shall first ascertain whether:
- (a) the applicant has complied with the procedures established for applications in accordance with article 4 and had given the Authority the commitments and assurances required by that article. In cases of non-compliance with these procedures or of absence of any of the commitments and assurances referred to, the applicant shall be given 45 days to remedy such defects;
- (b) the applicant possesses the requisite qualifications pursuant to article 4.
- 3. All proposed plans of work shall be dealt with in the order in which they were received, and the Authority shall conduct, as expeditiously as possible, an inquiry into their compliance with the terms of this Convention and the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, including the operational requirements, the financial contributions and the undertakings concerning the transfer of technology. As soon as the issues under investigation have been settled, the

Luthority shall approve such plans of work, provided that they conform to the uniform and non-discriminatory requirements established by the rules, regulations, and procedures of the Authority, unless:

- (a) Part or all of the proposed area is included in a previously approved plan of work or a previously submitted proposed plan of work which has not yet been finally acted on by the Authority; or
- (b) Part or all of the proposed area is disapproved by the Authority pursuant to article 162, paragraph 2 (w), of Part XI of this Convention;
- (c) The proposed plan of work has been submitted or sponsored by a State Party which already holds:
  - (i) plans of work for exploration and exploitation of polymetallic nodules in non-reserved sites that, together with either part of the proposed site, would exceed in size 30 per cent of a circular area of 400,000 square kilometres surrounding the centre of either part of the area covered by the proposed plan of work,
  - (ii) plans of work for the exploration and exploitation of polymetallic nodules in non-reserved sites which in aggregate size constitute 2 per cent of the total sea-bed area which is not reserved or otherwise withdrawn by the Authority from eligibility for exploitation pursuant to article 162, paragraph 2 (w), of Part XI of this Convention.
- 4. For the purpose of the standard set forth in paragraph 3 (c), a plan of work proposed by a partnership or consortium shall be counted on a pro rata basis among the sponsoring States Parties involved according to article 4, paragraph 2. The Authority may approve plans of work covered by paragraph 3 (c) if it determines that such approval would not permit a State Party or persons sponsored by it to monopolize the conduct of activities in the Area or to preclude other States Parties from activities in the Area.
- 5. Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph 3 (a), after the end of the interim period as defined in article 151 of Part XI of this Convention, the furtherity may adopt by means of rules, regulations and procedures other procedures and criteria consistent with this Convention for deciding which applicants shall have plans of work approved in cases of selection among applicants for a proposed area. These procedures and criteria shall ensure approval of plans of work on an equitable and non-discriminatory basis.

### <u>Irticle 7</u> <u>Selection of applicants for production authorizations</u>

- l. Six months after the entry into force of this Convention, and thereafter each fourth month, the Authority shall take up for consideration applications for production authorization submitted during the immediately preceding period. In the event all such applications can be approved without exceeding the production limitation or contravening the obligations of the Authority under a commodity agreement or arrangement to which it has become a party, as provided in article 151 of Part XI of this Convention, the Authority shall issue the authorizations applied for.
- 2. Where the selection must be made among applicants for production authorization because of the production limitation set forth in article 151, paragraph 2, of Part XI of this Convention, or because of the obligations of the Authority under a commodity agreement or arrangement to which it has become a party, as provided for in article 151, paragraph 1, of Part XI of this Convention, the Authority shall make the selection on the basis of objective and non-discriminatory standards set forth in rules and regulations drawn up in accordance with this article.
- 3. The Authority shall consider all applications for production authorization received within the preceding period of time referred to in paragraph 1, and shall give priority to those which:
- (a) Give better assurance of performance, taking into account the financial and technical qualifications of the proposed operator and performance, if any, under previously approved plans of work;
- (b) Provide earlier prospective financial benefits to the Authority, taking into account when production is scheduled to begin;
- (c) Have already invested most resources and effort in prospecting or exploration.
- 4. Applicants who are not selected in any period shall have priority in subsequent periods until they receive an authorization.
- 5. Selection shall be made taking into account the need to enhance opportunities for all States Parties, irrespective of their social and economic systems or geographical locations so as to avoid discrimination against any State or system, to participate in activities in the Area and to prevent monopolization of such activities. The provisions of this subparagraph shall be applied whenever the Authority considers priorities for production authorization.
- 6. Production authorization with respect to reserved areas shall have priority whenever fewer reserved sites than non-reserved sites are under exploitation.
- 7. The Authority shall make its decisions pursuant to this article as promptly as possible after the close of each period.

# Article 8 Reservation of sites

Each application, other than those proposed by the Enterprise or by any others for reserved sites, shall cover a total area, which need not be a single continuous area, sufficiently large and of sufficient estimated commercial value to allow two mining operations. The applicant shall indicate the co-ordinates dividing the area into two parts of equal estimated commercial value and submit all the data obtained by him with respect to both parts of the area. Without prejudice to the powers of the Authority pursuant to article 17 the data to be submitted concerning polymetallic nodules will relate to mapping, sampling, the density of nodules, and the composition of metals in them. Within 45 days of receiving such data the Authority shall designate the part which is to be reserved solely for the conduct of activities by the Authority through the Enterprise or in association with developing States. This designation may be deferred for a further period of 45 days if the Authority requests an independent expert to assess whether all data required by this article has been submitted to the Authority. The area designated shall become a reserved area as soon as the plan of work for the non-reserved area is approved and the contract is signed.

# Article 9 Activities in reserved sites

- 1. The Enterprise shall be given an opportunity to decide whether it intends to carry out activities in each reserved site. This decision may be taken at any time, unless a notification pursuant to paragraph 4 is received by the Authority, in which event the Enterprise shall take its decision within a reasonable time. The Enterprise may decide to exploit such sites in joint ventures with the interested State or entity.
- 2. The Enterprise may conclude contracts for the execution of part of its activities in accordance with article 12 of annex IV. It may also enter into joint ventures for the conduct of such activities with any willing entities which are eligible to carry out activities in the Area pursuant to article 153, paragraph 2 (b), of Part XI of this Convention. When considering such joint ventures, the Enterprise shall offer to States Parties which are developing States and their nationals the opportunity of effective participation.
- 3. The Authority may prescribe, in the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority procedural and substantive requirements and conditions with respect to such contracts and joint ventures.
- 4. Any State Party which is a developing State or any natural or juridical person sponsored by it and effectively controlled by it or by other developing State which is a qualified applicant, or any group of the foregoing, may notify the Authority that it wishes to submit a plan of work pursuant to article 6 with

respect to a reserved site. The plan of work shall be considered if the Enterprise decides, pursuant to paragraph 1, that it does not intend to carry out activities in that site.

### Article 10 Separate stages of operations

If an operator in accordance with article 3, paragraph 4 (c), has an approved plan of work for exploration only, he shall have a preference and a priority among applicants for a plan of work for exploitation with regard to the same areas and resources; provided, however, that where the operator's performance has not been satisfactory such preference or priority may be withdrawn.

## Article 11 Joint arrangements

- 1. Contracts may provide for joint arrangements, when the parties so agree, between the contractor and the Authority through the Enterprise, in the form of joint ventures or production sharing, as well as any other form of joint arrangement which shall have the same protection against termination, suspension or revision as contracts with the Authority.
- 2. Contractors entering into such joint arrangements with the Enterprise may receive financial incentives as provided for in the financial arrangements established in article 13.
- 3. Joint venture partners of the Enterprise shall be liable for the payments required by article 13 to the extent of their joint venture share, subject to financial incentives as provided in article 13.

# Article 12 Activities conducted by the Enterprise

- 1. Activities in the Area conducted under article 153, paragraph 2 (a), of Part XI of this Convention through the Enterprise shall be governed by the provisions of Part XI, and the relevant annexes, the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority and its relevant decisions.
- 2. Any plan of work proposed by the Enterprise shall be accompanied by evidence supporting its financial and technological capability.

### Article 13 Financial terms of contracts

- 1. In adopting rules, regulations and procedures concerning the financial terms of a contract between the Authority and the entities referred to in article 153, paragraph 2 (b), of Part XI of this Convention in accordance with the provisions of Part XI, and in negotiating the financial terms of a contract in accordance with the provisions of Part XI and those rules, regulations and procedures, the Authority shall be guided by the following objectives:
- (a) To ensure optimum revenues for the Authority from the proceeds of commercial exploitation;
- (b) To attract investments and technology to the exploration and exploitation of the Area;
- (c) To ensure equality of financial treatment and comparable financial obligations on the part of all States and other entities which obtain contracts;
- (d) To provide incentives on a uniform and non-discriminatory basis for contractors to undertake joint arrangements with the Enterprise and developing countries or their nationals, to stimulate the transfer of technology thereto, and to train the personnel of the Authority and of developing States;
- (e) To enable the Enterprise to engage in sea-bed mining effectively at the same time as the entities referred to in article 153, paragraph 2 (b), of Part XI of this Convention; and
- (f) To ensure that the financial incentives provided to contractors under paragraph 14, or under the terms of contracts reviewed in accordance with article 19, or under the provisions of article 11 with respect to joint ventures, shall not result in subsidizing contractors with a view to placing them at an artificially competitive advantage relative to land-based miners.
- 2. A fee shall be levied for the administrative cost of processing an application for a contract of exploration and exploitation and shall be fixed at an amount of \$500,000 per application. If the cost incurred by the Authority in processing an application is less than \$500,000, the Authority shall refund the difference to the applicant. The amount of the fee shall be reviewed from time to time by the Council in order to ensure that it covers the administrative cost of processing such an application.
- 3. A contractor shall pay an annual fixed fee of \$\partial \text{million from the date of entry into force of the contract. If the approved commencement of commercial production is postponed because of a delay in the allocation of the production authorization, in accordance with article 151 of Part XI of this Convention, the annual fixed fee shall be waived for the period of postponement. From the commencement of commercial production, the contractor shall pay either the production charge or the annual fixed fee, whichever is greater.

- 4. Within a year from the date of commencement of the commercial production, in conformity with paragraph 3, a contractor shall choose to make his financial contribution to the Authority either by:
  - (a) Paying a production charge only; or
  - (b) Paying a combination of a production charge and a share of net proceeds.
- 5. (a) If a contractor chooses to make his financial contribution to the Authority by paying a production charge only, it shall be fixed at a percentage of the market value of the processed metals produced from the nodules extracted from the contract area in accordance with the following schedule:
  - (i) Years 1-10 of commercial production

5 per cent

(ii) Years 11 to the end of commercial production

12 per cent

- (b) The said market value shall be the product of the quantity of the processed metals produced from the nodules extracted from the contract area and the average price for those metals during the relevant accounting year, as defined in paragraphs 7 and 8.
- 6. If a contractor chooses to make his financial contribution to the Authority by paying a combination of a production charge and a share of net proceeds, such payments shall be determined as follows:
- (a) The production charge shall be fixed at a percentage of the market value of the processed metals produced from the nodules extracted from the contract area in accordance with the following schedule:
  - (i) First period of commercial production

2 per cent

(ii) Second period of commercial production

4 per cent

- If, in the second period of commercial production, as defined in subparagraph (d), the return on investment in any accounting year, as defined in subparagraph (m), shall fall below 15 per cent as a result of the payment of the production charge at 4 per cent, the production charge shall be 2 per cent instead of 4 per cent in that accounting year;
- (b) The said market value shall be the product of the quantity of the processed metals produced from the nodules extracted from the contract area and the average price for those metals during the relevant accounting year as defined in paragraphs 7 and 8;
  - '(c) (i) The Authority's share of net proceeds shall be taken out of that portion of the contractor's net proceeds which is attributable to the mining of the resources of the contract area, referred to hereinafter as attributable net proceeds:
  - (ii) The Authority's share of attributable net proceeds shall be determined in accordance with the following incremental schedule:

| Portion of attributable Net Proceeds   | First period of commercial production | Second period of commercial production |
|--|---------------------------------------|--|
| That portion representing a return on investment which is greater than 0 per cent, but less than 10 per cent | 35 per cent                           | 40 per cent                            |
| That portion representing a return on investment which is 10 per cent or greater, but less than 20 per cent  | 42.5 per cent                         | 50 per cent                            |
| That portion representing<br>a return on investment<br>which is 20 per cent or<br>greater                    | 50 per cent                           | 70 per cent                            |

(d) The first period of commercial production referred to in subparagraphs (a) and (c), shall commence in the first accounting year of commercial production, and terminate in the accounting year in which the contractor's development costs with interest on the unrecovered portion thereof are fully recovered by his cash surplus, as set out below;

In the first accounting year during which development costs are incurred, unrecovered development costs shall equal the development costs less cash surplus in that year. In each subsequent accounting year, unrecovered development costs shall equal the unrecovered development costs of the preceding accounting year, plus interest thereon at the rate of 10 per cent per annum, plus development costs incurred in the current accounting year and less contractor's cash surplus in the current accounting year. The accounting year in which unrecovered development costs become zero for the first time, shall be the accounting year in which the contractor's development costs with interest on the unrecovered portion thereof are fully recovered by his cash surplus;

The contractor's cash surplus in any accounting year shall be his gross proceeds less his operating costs and less his payments to the Authority under subparagraph (c);

The second period of commercial production shall commence in the accounting year following the termination of the first period of commercial production and shall continue until the end of the contract.

(e) The term "attributable net proceeds" shall mean the product of the contractor's net proceeds and the ratio of the development costs in the mining sector to the contractor's development costs. In the event that the contractor engages in mining, transportation of nodules and production primarily of three processed metals, namely, cobalt, copper and nickel, the amount of attributable net proceeds shall not be less than 25 per cent of the contractor's net proceeds. Subject to subparagraph (n), in all other cases, including those where the contractor engages in mining, transportation of nodules, and production primarily of four processed metals namely, cobalt, copper, manganese and nickel, the Authority may, by regulations, prescribe appropriate floors which shall bear the same relationship to each case as the 25 per cent floor does to the three metal cases.

- (f) The term "contractor's net proceeds" shall mean the contractor's gross proceeds less his operating costs and less the recovery of his development costs as set out in subparagraph (j).
  - (g) (i) In the event that the contractor engages in mining, transportation of nodules and production of processed metals, the term "contractor's gross proceeds" shall mean the gross revenues from the sale of the processed metals, and any other monies deemed to be reasonably attributable to the operation of the contract in accordance with the financial rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.
  - (ii) In all cases other than those specified in subparagraphs (g) (i) and (n) (iii) the term "contractor's gross proceeds" shall mean the gross revenues from the sale of the semi-processed metals from the nodules extracted from the contract area, and any other monies deemed reasonably attributable to the operation of the contract in accordance with the financial rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.
  - (h) The term "contractor's development costs" shall mean:
  - (i) All expenditures incurred prior to the commencement of commercial production which are directly related to the development of the productive capacity of the contract area and the activities related thereto for operations under the contract in all cases other than that specified in subparagraph (n) in conformity with generally recognized accounting principles, including inter alia, costs of machinery, equipment, ships, processing plant, construction, buildings, land, roads, prospecting and exploration of the contract area, research and development, interest, required leases, licences, fees; and
  - (ii) Similar expenditures to those described in (i) above, incurred subsequent to the commencement of commercial production, necessary to carry out the plan of work, except those chargeable to operating costs.
- (i) The proceeds from the disposal of capital assets and the market value of those capital assets which are no longer required for operations under the contract and which are not sold shall be deducted from the contractor's development costs during the relevant accounting year. When these deductions exceed the contractor's development costs the excess shall be added to the contractor's gross proceeds.
- (j) The contractor's development costs referred to in subparagraphs (h) (i) and (n) (iv) shall be recovered in 10 equal annual instalments from the date of commencement of commercial production. The contractor's development costs incurred subsequent to the commencement of commercial production, referred to in subparagraphs (h) (ii) and (n) (iv) shall be recovered in 10 or fewer equal annual instalments so as to ensure their complete recovery by the end of the contract.
- (k) The term "contractor's operating costs" shall mean all expenditures incurred after the commencement of commercial production in the operation of the productive capacity of the contract area and the activities related thereto, for

operations under the contract, in conformity with generally recognized accounting principles, including, <u>inter alia</u>, the fixed annual fee or the production charge, whichever is greater, expenditures for wages, salaries, employee benefits, materials, services, transportation, processing and marketing costs, interest, utilities, preservation of the marine environment, overhead and administrative costs specifically related to the operation of the contract, and any net operating losses carried forward or backward as specified below. Net operating losses may be carried forward for two consecutive years except in the last two years of the contract when they may be carried backward to the two preceding years.

- (1) In the event that the contractor engages in mining, transportation of nodules, and production of processed and semi-processed metals, the term "development costs of the mining sector" shall mean the portion of the contractor's development costs which is directly related to the mining of the resources of the contract area, in conformity with generally recognized accounting principles, and the financial rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, including, inter alia, application fee, annual fixed fee, and, where applicable, costs of prospecting and exploration of the contract area, and a portion of research and development costs.
- (m) The term "return on investment" in any accounting year, shall mean the ratio of attributable net proceeds in that year to the development costs of the mining sector. The development costs of the mining sector for the purpose of this subparagraph shall include expenditures on new or replacement equipment in the mining sector less the original cost of the equipment replaced.
  - (n) In the event that the contractor engages in mining only:
  - (i) The term "attributable net proceeds" shall mean the whole of the contractor's net proceeds;
  - (ii) The term "contractor's net proceeds" shall be as defined in subparagraph (f);
  - (iii) The term "contractor's gross proceeds" shall mean the gross revenues from the sale of the nodules, and any other monies deemed to be reasonably attributable to the operation of the contract in accordance with the financial rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority;
  - (iv) The term "contractor's development costs" shall mean all expenditures incurred prior to the commencement of commercial production as in subparagraph (h) (i), and all expenditures incurred subsequent to the commencement of commercial production, as in subparagraph (h) (ii), which are directly related to the mining of the resources of the contract area, in conformity with generally recognized accounting principles;
  - (v) The term "contractor's operating costs" shall mean the contractor's operating costs as in subparagraph (k), which are directly related to the mining of the resources of the contract area in conformity with generally recognized accounting principles;

- (vi) The term "return on investment in any accounting year" shall mean the ratio of the contractor's net proceeds in that year to the contractor's development costs. Contractor's development costs for the purpose of this subparagraph shall include expenditures on new or replacement equipment less the original cost of the equipment replaced.
- (o) The costs referred to in subparagraphs (h), (k), (l) and (n), in respect of interest paid by the contractor shall be allowed to the extent that, in all the circumstances, the Authority approves, pursuant to article 4, paragraph 1, the debt-equity ratio and the rates of interest as reasonable, having regard to existing commercial practice.
- (p) The costs referred to in this paragraph shall not be interpreted as including payments of corporate income taxes or similar charges levied by States in respect of the operations of the contractor.
- 7. (a) The term "processed metals", referred to in paragraphs 5 and 6, shall mean the metals in the most basic form in which they are customarily traded on international terminal markets. For this purpose, the Λuthority shall specify, in the financial rules, regulations and procedures, the relevant international terminal market. For the metals which are not traded on such markets, the term "processed metals" shall mean the metals in the most basic form in which they are customarily traded in representative arm's length transactions;
- (b) In the event that the Authority cannot otherwise determine the quantity of the processed metals produced from the nodules extracted from the contract area referred to in paragraphs 5 (b) and 6 (b), the quantity shall be determined on the basis of the metal content of the nodules extracted from the contract area, processing recovery efficiency and other relevant factors in accordance with the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, and in conformity with generally recognized accounting principles.
- 8. If an international terminal market provides a representative pricing mechanism for processed metals, nodules and semi-processed metals from the nodules, the average price on such a market shall be used. In all other cases, the Authority shall, after consulting the contractor, determine a fair price for the said products in accordance with paragraph 9.
- 9. (a) All costs, expenditures, proceeds and revenues and all determinations of price and value referred to in this article shall be the result of free market or arm's length transactions. In the absence thereof, they shall be determined by the Authority, after consulting the contractor, as though they were the result of free market or arm's length transactions taking into account relevant transactions in other markets.
- (b) In order to ensure enforcement of and compliance with the provisions of this paragraph, the Authority shall be guided by the principles adopted for, and the interpretation given to, arm's length transactions by the United Nations Group of the Economic and Social Council on Multinational Enterprises, the Ad Hoc Group

of Experts on Tax Treaties between Developing and Developed Countries and other international organizations, and shall adopt rules and regulations specifying uniform and internationally acceptable accounting rules and procedures, and the means of selection by the contractor of certified independent accountants acceptable to the Authority for the purpose of auditing in compliance with the said rules and regulations.

- 10. The contractor shall make available to the accountants, in accordance with the financial rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, such financial data as are required to determine compliance with this article.
- ll. All costs, expenditures, proceeds and revenues, and all prices and values referred to in this article, shall be determined in accordance with generally recognized accounting principles and the financial rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.
- 12. The payments to the Authority under paragraphs 5 and 6 shall be made in freely usable currencies or currencies which are freely available and effectively usable on the major foreign exchange markets, or at the contractor's option, in the equivalents of processed metals at market value. The market value shall be determined in accordance with paragraph 5 (b). The freely usable currencies and currencies which are freely available and effectively usable in the major foreign exchange markets shall be defined in the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority in accordance with prevailing international monetary practice.
- 13. All financial obligations of the contractor to the Authority, as well as all his fees, costs, expenditures, proceeds and revenues referred to in this article shall be adjusted by expressing them in constant terms relative to a base year.
- 14. The Authority may, taking into account any recommendations of the Economic Planning Commission and the Legal and Technical Commission, adopt rules and regulations that provide for incentives, on a uniform and non-discriminatory basis, to contractors to further the objectives set out in paragraph 1.
- 15. In the event of a dispute between the Authority and a contractor over the interpretation or application of the financial terms of a contract, either party may submit the dispute to binding commercial arbitration, unless both parties agree to settle the dispute by other means, in accordance with article 188, paragraph 2, of Part XI of this Convention.

#### Article 14 Transfer of data

- 1. The operator shall transfer in accordance with the rules and regulations and the terms and conditions of the plan of work to the Authority at time intervals determined by the Authority all data which are both necessary and relevant to the effective implementation of the powers and functions of the principal organs of the Authority in respect of the area covered by the plan of work.
- 2. Transferred data in respect of the area covered by the plan of work, deemed to be proprietary may only be used for the purposes set forth in this article. Data which are necessary for the promulgation of rules and regulations concerning protection of the marine environment and safety other than equipment design data shall not be deemed to be proprietary.
- 3. Data transferred to the Authority by prospectors, applicants for contracts for exploration and exploitation, and contractors deemed to be proprietary shall not be disclosed by the Authority to the Enterprise or outside the Authority, but the data on the reserved sites may be disclosed to the Enterprise. Such data transferred by such persons to the Enterprise shall not be disclosed by the Enterprise to the Authority or outside of the Authority. The responsibilities set forth in article 168, paragraph 2, of Part XI of this Convention are equally applicable to the staff of the Enterprise.

### Article 15 Training programmes

The contractor shall draw up practical programmes for the training of personnel of the Authority and developing States, including the participation of such personnel in all activities covered by the contract, in accordance with article 144, paragraph 2, of Part XI of this Convention.

# Article 16 Exclusive right to explore and exploit

The Authority shall, pursuant to Part XI and the rules and regulations prescribed by the Authority, accord the operator the exclusive right to explore and exploit the area covered by the plan of work in respect of a specified category of minerals and shall ensure that no other entity operates in the same area for a different category of minerals in a manner which might interfere with the operations of the operator. The operator shall have security of tenure in accordance with article 153, paragraph 6, of Part XI of this Convention.

### Article 17 Rules, regulations and procedures

1. The Authority shall adopt and uniformly apply rules, regulations and procedures in accordance with article 160, paragraph 2(f)(ii), and article 162, paragraph 2(n)(ii) of Part XI of this Convention, for the implementation of its functions as prescribed in Part XI, <u>inter alia</u>, on the following matters:

- (a) Administrative procedures relating to prospecting, exploration and exploitation in the Area;
  - (b) Operations:
  - (i) Size of area;
  - (ii) Duration of operations;
- (iii) Performance requirements including assurances pursuant to article 4, paragraph 6 (c);
  - (iv) Categories of resources;
  - (v) Renunciation of areas;
  - (vi) Progress reports;
  - (vii) Submission of data;
  - (viii) Inspection and supervision of operations;
- (ix) Prevention of interference with other activities in the marine environment;
  - (x) Transfer of rights and obligations by a contractor;
- (xi) Procedures for transfer of technology to developing States in accordance with article 144 of Part XI of this Convention and for their direct participation;
- (xii) Mining standards and practices including those relating to operational safety, conservation of the resources and the protection of the marine environment;
  - (xiii) Definition of commercial production;
  - (xiv) Qualification standards for applicants;
    - (c) Financial matters:
- (i) Establishment of uniform and non-discriminatory costing and accounting rules, as well as the method of selection of auditors;
  - (ii) Apportionment of proceeds of operations;
  - (iii) The incentives referred to in article 13;
- (d) Rules, regulations and procedures to implement decisions of the Council taken in pursuance of articles 151, paragraph 4, and 164, paragraph 2 (d), of Part XI of this Convention.

- 2. Regulations on the following items shall fully reflect the objective criteria set out below:
  - (a) Size of area:

The Authority shall determine the appropriate size of areas for exploration which may be up to twice as large as those for exploitation in order to permit intensive exploration operations. The size of area shall be calculated to satisfy the requirements of article 8 on reservation of sites as well as stated production requirements consistent with article 151 of Part XI in accordance with the terms of the contract taking into account the state of the art of technology then available for ocean mining and the relevant physical characteristics of the area. Areas shall neither be smaller nor larger than are necessary to satisfy this objective.

- (b) Duration of operations:
- (i) Prospecting shall be without time-limit;
- (ii) Exploration should be of sufficient duration as to permit a thorough survey of the specific area, the design and construction of mining equipment for the area, the design and construction of small and medium-size processing plants for the purpose of testing mining and processing systems;
- (iii) The duration of exploitation should be related to the economic life of the mining project, taking into consideration such factors as the depletion of the ore, the useful life of mining equipment and processing facilities and commercial viability. Exploitation should be of sufficient duration as to permit commercial extraction of minerals of the area and should include a reasonable time period for construction of commercial scale mining and processing systems, during which period commercial production should not be required. The total duration of exploitation, however, should also be short enough to give the Authority an opportunity to amend the terms and conditions of the plan of work at the time it considers renewal in accordance with rules and regulations which it has issued subsequent to entering into the plan of work.
  - (c) Performance requirements:

The Authority shall require that during the exploration stage, periodic expenditures be made by the operator which are reasonably related to the size of the area covered by the plan of work and the expenditures which would be expected of a bona fide operator who intended to bring the area into commercial production within the time-limits established by the Authority. Such required expenditures should not be established at a level which would discourage prospective operators with less costly technology than is prevalently in use. The Authority shall establish a maximum time interval after the exploration stage is completed and the exploitation stage begins to achieve commercial production. To determine this interval, the Authority should take into consideration that construction of large-scale mining and processing systems cannot be initiated until after the termination of the exploration stage and the commencement of the exploitation stage. Accordingly, the interval to bring an area into commercial production should take into account the time necessary for this construction after the completion of the exploration stage and reasonable allowance should be made for unavoidable delays

in the construction schedule. Once commercial production is achieved in the exploitation stage, the Authority shall within reasonable limits and taking into consideration all relevant factors require the operator to maintain commercial production throughout the period of the plan of work.

#### (d) Categories of resources:

In determining the category of resources in respect of which a plan of work may be approved, the Authority shall give emphasis <u>inter alia</u> to the following characteristics:

- (i) Resources which require the use of similar mining methods; and
- (ii) Resources which can be developed simultaneously without undue interference between operators in the same area developing different resources.

Nothing in this subparagraph shall deter the Authority from granting a contract for more than one category of mineral in the same area to the same applicant.

#### (e) Renunciation of areas:

The operator shall have the right at any time to renounce without penalty the whole or part of his rights in the area covered by a plan of work.

(f) Protection of the marine environment:

Rules and regulations shall be drawn up in order to secure effective protection of the marine environment from harmful effects directly resulting from activities in the Area or from shipboard processing immediately above a mine site of minerals derived from the mine site, taking into account the extent to which such harmful effects may directly result from drilling, dredging, coring and excavation as well as disposal, dumping and discharge into the marine environment of sediment, wastes or other effluents.

#### (g) Commercial production:

Commercial production shall be deemed to have begun if an operator engages in activity of sustained large-scale recovery operations which yield a sufficient quantity of materials as to indicate clearly that the principal purpose is large-scale production rather than production intended for information gathering, analysis or equipment or plant-testing.

#### Article 18 Penalties

- 1. A contractor's rights under the contract concerned may be suspended or terminated only in the following cases:
- (a) If, in spite of warnings by the Authority, the contractor has conducted his activities in such a way as to result in serious, persistent and wilful violations of the fundamental terms of the contract, Part XI and the rules and regulations of the Authority, or

- (b) If a contractor has failed to comply with a final binding decision of the dispute settlement body applicable to him.
- 2. The Authority may impose upon the contractor monetary penalties proportionate to the seriousness of the violation in any case of violation of terms of contract not covered under paragraph 1 (a), or in lieu of suspension or termination in any case covered under paragraph 1 (a).
- 3. Except in cases of emergency orders as provided for in article 162, paragraph 2 (v), of Part XI of this Convention, the Authority may not execute a decision involving monetary penalties, suspension or termination until the contractor has been accorded a reasonable opportunity to exhaust the judicial remedies available to him pursuant to section 6 of Part XI.

# Article 19 Revision of contract

- 1. When circumstances have arisen, or are likely to arise, which, in the opinion of either party, would render the contract inequitable or make it impracticable or impossible to achieve the objectives set out in the contract or in Part XI, the parties shall enter into negotiations to adjust it to new circumstances.
- 2. Any contract entered into in accordance with article 153, paragraph 3, of Part XI of this Convention may be revised only with the consent of the parties.

# Article 20 Transfer of rights and obligations

The rights and obligations arising out of a contract shall be transferred only with the consent of the Authority, and in accordance with the rules and regulations adopted by it. The Authority shall not unreasonably withhold consent to the transfer if the proposed transferee is in all respects a qualified applicant and assumes all of the obligations of the transferor and if the transfer does not confer to the transferee a plan of work, the approval of which would be forbidden by article 6, paragraph 3 (d).

#### Article 21 Applicable law

1. The law applicable to the contract shall be the provisions of Part XI, the rules and regulations of the Authority, the terms and conditions of the contract, and other rules of international law not incompatible with this Convention. Any final decision rendered by a court or tribunal having jurisdiction by virtue of this Convention relating to the rights and obligations of the Authority and of the contractor shall be valid and enforceable in the territory of each State Party.

2. No State Party may impose conditions on a contractor that are inconsistent with Part XI. However, the application by a State Party of environmental or other regulations to sea-bcd miners it sponsors or to ships flying its flag, more stringent than those imposed by the Authority pursuant to article 17, paragraph 2 (f), shall not be deemed inconsistent with Part XI.

#### Article 22 Liability

Any responsibility or liability for wrongful damage arising out of the conduct of operations by the contractor shall lie with the contractor, account being taken of contributory factors by the Authority. Similarly, any responsibility or liability for wrongful damage arising out of the exercise of the powers and functions of the Authority, including liability for violations under article 168, paragraph 2, of Part XI of this Convention, shall lie with the Authority, account being taken of contributory factors by the contractor. Liability in every case shall be for the actual amount of damage.

#### ANNEX IV

### Statute of the Enterprise

#### Article 1 Purpose

- 1. The Enterprise shall be the organ of the Authority which shall carry out activities in the Area directly, pursuant to article 153, paragraph 2 (a) of Part XI of this Convention, as well as transportation, processing and marketing of minerals recovered from the Area.
- 2. In carrying out its purposes and in the performance of its functions, the Enterprise shall act in accordance with the provisions of this Convention, including its annexes, and the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.
- 3. In developing the resources of the Area pursuant to paragraph 1, the Enterprise shall, subject to the provisions of this Convention, operate on sound commercial principles.

### Article 2 Relationship to the Authority

- 1. Pursuant to article 170 of Part XI of this Convention, the Enterprise shall act in accordance with the general policies of the Assembly and the directives of the Council.
- 2. Subject to paragraph 1, the Enterprise shall enjoy autonomy in the conduct of its operations.
- 3. Nothing in this Convention shall make the Enterprise liable for the acts or obligations of the Authority or the Authority liable for the acts or obligations of the Enterprise.

# Article 3 Limitation of liability

Without prejudice to article 11, paragraph 3, no member of the Authority shall be liable by reason only of its membership for the acts or obligations of the Enterprise.

### Article 4 Structure of the Enterprise

The Enterprise shall have a Governing Board, a Director-General and the staff necessary for the performance of its functions.

#### Article 5 Governing Board

- 1. The Governing Board shall be composed of 15 members elected by the Assembly in accordance with article 160, paragraph 2 (c), of Part XI of this Convention. In the election of the members of the Board, due regard shall be paid to the principle of equitable geographical distribution. In submitting nominations of candidates for election to the Board, members of the Authority shall bear in mind the need to nominate candidates of the highest standard of competence, with qualifications in relevant fields, so as to ensure the viability and success of the Enterprise.
- 2. Members of the Board shall be elected for a term of four years and shall be eligible for re-election. In the election and re-election of the members of the Board, due regard shall be paid to the principle of rotation.
- 3. Each member of the Board shall have one vote. All matters before the Board shall be decided by a majority of the members of the Board. If a member has a conflict of interest on a matter before the Board he shall refrain from voting on the matter.
- 4. Each member of the Board shall receive remuneration to be paid out of the funds of the Enterprise. The amount of remuneration shall be fixed by the Assembly, upon the recommendation of the Council.
- 5. Members of the Board shall act in their personal capacity. In the performance of their duties they shall not seek or receive instructions from any Government or from any other source. The members of the Authority shall respect the independent character of the members of the Board and refrain from all attempts to influence any of them in the discharge of their duties.
- 6. Members of the Board shall continue in office until their successors are elected. If the office of a member of the Board becomes vacant, the Assembly shall, upon the recommendation of the Council, elect another member for the remainder of the unexpired term.
- 7. The Board shall normally function at the principal office of the Enterprise and shall meet as often as the business of the Enterprise may require.
- 8. A quorum for any meeting of the Board shall be two thirds of the members of the Board.
- 9. Any member of the Authority may ask the Board for information in respect of its operations which particularly affect that member. The Board shall endeavour to provide such information.

# Article 6 Powers and functions

The Governing Board shall direct the business operations of the Enterprise. Subject to the provisions of this Convention and its annexes, the Governing Board shall exercise all the powers necessary to fulfil the purposes of the Enterprise, including powers:

- (a) to develop plans of work and programmes in carrying out its activities as provided for in article 170 of Part XI of this Convention;
- (b) to draw up and submit formal written plans of work to the Council in accordance with article 153, paragraph 3 and article 162, paragraph 2 (j) of Part XI of this Convention;
- (c) to prepare and submit applications for production authorization to the Council in accordance with article 151, paragraph 2;
- (d) to authorize negotiations on the acquisition of technology, including those provided for in article 5, paragraphs 3 (a), 3 (c) and 3 (d) of annex III and to approve the results of such negotiations;
- (e) to establish terms and conditions and to authorize negotiations for entering into joint ventures and other forms of joint arrangements as provided for in article 9 and article 11 of annex III and to approve the results of such negotiations;
- (f) to recommend what portion of its net income should be retained as its reserves in accordance with article 160, paragraph 2 (f) of Part XI of this Convention;
  - (g) to approve the annual budget of the Enterprise;
- (h) to authorize the procurement of goods and services in accordance with article 12, paragraph 3;
  - (i) to submit an annual report to the Council as provided for in article 9;
- (j) to submit to the Council for the approval of the Assembly, rules in respect of the organization, management, appointment and dismissal of the staff of the Enterprise, and to adopt regulations to give effect to such rules;
  - (k) to elect a Chairman from among its members;
  - (1) to adopt its own rules of procedure;
- (m) to borrow funds and to furnish such collateral or other security as it may determine in accordance with article 11, paragraph 2;

- (n) to enter into any legal proceedings, agreements and transactions and to take any other actions in accordance with article 13;
- (o) to delegate, subject to the approval of the Council, any non-discretionary powers to the Director-General and to its committees.

# Article 7 Director-General and staff

- 1. The Assembly shall, upon the recommendation of the Council, and the nomination of the Governing Board, elect the Director-General who shall not be a member of the Board. The Director-General shall be the legal representative of the Enterprise. He shall participate in the meetings of the Board but shall have no vote. He may participate in meetings of the Assembly and the Council when these organs are dealing with matters concerning the Enterprise, but shall have no vote at such meetings. The Director-General shall hold office for a fixed-term not exceeding five years and may be re-elected for further terms.
- 2. The Director-General shall be the chief executive of the Enterprise and shall be directly responsible to the Governing Board for the conduct of the business of the Enterprise. He shall be responsible for the organization, management, appointment and dismissal of the staff in accordance with the rules and regulations referred to in article 6, subparagraph (j).
- 3. The Director-General and the staff of the Enterprise, in the discharge of their duties, shall not seek or receive instructions from any Government or from any other source. They shall refrain from any action which might reflect on their position as international officials of the Enterprise responsible only to the Enterprise. The members of the Authority shall respect the international character of the Director-General and the staff of the Enterprise and shall refrain from all attempts to influence any of them in the discharge of their duties.
- 4. In appointing the staff, the Director-General shall, subject to the paramount importance of securing the highest standards of efficiency and of technical competence, pay due regard to the importance of recruiting personnel on an equitable geographical basis.

# Article 8 Location

The Enterprise shall have its principal office at the seat of the Authority. The Enterprise may establish other offices and facilities in the territory of any member of the Authority with the consent of that member.

### Article 9 Provision of reports

- 1. The Enterprise shall, not later than three months after the end of each financial year, submit to the Council for its consideration an annual report containing an audited statement of its accounts and shall transmit to the Council at appropriate intervals a summary statement of its financial position and a profit and loss statement showing the results of its operations.
- 2. The Enterprise shall publish its annual report and such other reports as it deems appropriate.
- 3. Copies of all reports and financial statements referred to in this article shall be distributed to the members of the Authority.

# Article 10 Allocation of net income

- 1. Subject to paragraph 3, the Enterprise shall make payments to the Authority under article 13 of annex III or their equivalent.
- 2. The Assembly shall, upon the recommendation of the Governing Board, determine what portion of the net income of the Enterprise shall be retained as its reserves. The remainder shall be transferred to the Authority.
- 3. During an initial period required for the Enterprise to become self-supporting, which shall not exceed 10 years from the commencement of its commercial production, the Assembly shall exempt the Enterprise from the payments referred to in paragraph 1, and shall leave all of the net income of the Enterprise in its reserves.

#### Article 11 Finance

- 1. The funds of the Enterprise shall include:
- (a) amounts received from the Authority in accordance with article 173, paragraph 2 (b), of Part XI of this Convention;
- (b) voluntary contributions made by States Parties for the purpose of financing activities of the Enterprise;
- (c) amounts borrowed by the Enterprise in accordance with the provisions of paragraphs 2 and 3;
  - (d) income of the Enterprise through its operations.
- (e) other funds made available to the Enterprise to enable it to carry out its functions and to commence operations as soon as possible.

- 2. (a) The Enterprise shall have the power to borrow funds and to furnish such collateral or other security as it may determine. Before making a public sale of its obligations in the markets or currency of a State Party, the Enterprise shall first obtain the approval of that State Party. The total amount of borrowings shall be approved by the Council upon the recommendation of the Governing Board.
- (b) States Parties shall make every reasonable effort to support application by the Enterprise for loans in capital markets and from international financial institutions.
- 3. (a) The Enterprise shall be provided with the funds necessary to explore and exploit one mine site, and to transport, process and market the metals recovered therefrom, namely nickel, copper, cobalt and manganese and to meet its initial administrative expenses. The amount of the said funds, and the criteria and factors for its adjustment, shall be included by the Preparatory Commission in the draft rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.
- (b) All States Parties shall make available to the Enterprise an amount equivalent to one half of the funds referred to in subparagraph (a) by way of long-term interest-free loans in accordance with the scale of assessments for the United Nations regular budget in force at the time when the contributions are made, adjusted to take into account the States which are not members of the United Nations. Debts incurred by the Enterprise in raising the other half of the funds shall be guaranteed by all States Parties in accordance with the same scale.
- (c) In the event that the sum of the financial contributions of States Parties ratifying or acceding to the Convention is less than the funds to be provided to the Enterprise under subparagraph (a), the Assembly shall, at its first meeting, examine the extent of the shortfall and, taking int account the obligation of States Parties under subparagraphs (a) and (b) and the recommendations of the Preparatory Commission, adopt, by consensus, measures for dealing with the shortfall.
- (d) Each State Party shall, within 60 days after the entry into force of this Convention, or within 30 days after the date of deposit of its instrument of ratification, acceptance or approval, whichever is later, deposit with the Enterprise irrevocable non-negotiable non-interest-bearing promissory notes in the amount of the share of such State Party of interest-free loans under paragraph 3 (b).

At the earliest practicable date after this Convention enters into force and thereafter, at annual or other appropriate intervals, the Governing Board of the Enterprise shall prepare a schedule of the magnitude and timing of its requirements for the funding of its administrative expenses and for carrying out activities under article 170 of Part XI and article 12 of annex IV.

The States Parties shall, thereupon, be notified by the Enterprise, through the Authority, of their respective shares of the funds in accordance with paragraph 3 (b), required for such expenses. The Enterprise shall encash such amounts of the promissory notes as may be required to meet the expenditure referred to in the schedule with respect to interest-free loans.

States Parties shall, upon receipt of such notification, make available their respective shares of guarantees of debt of the Enterprise in accordance with paragraph 3 (b).

- (c) Upon request by the Enterprise, a State Party may provide a guarantee covering debts additional to the amount it has guaranteed in accordance with or on the basis of the said scale. In lieu of debt guarantee, a State Party may make a voluntary contribution to the Enterprise in an amount equivalent to that portion of the debts which it would otherwise be liable to guarantee.
- (f) The repayment of the interest-bearing loans shall have priority over the repayment of the interest-free loans. The repayment of interest-free loans shall be in accordance with a schedule adopted by the Assembly, upon the recommendation of the Council and the advice of the Governing Board of the Enterprise. In the performance of this function the Governing Board of the Enterprise shall be guided by the relevant provisions of the rules, regulations and procedures. Such rules, regulations and procedures shall take into account the paramount importance of ensuring the performance of the Enterprise and in particular, ensuring its financial independence.
- (g) Funds made available to the Enterprise shall be in freely usable currencies or currencies which are freely available and effectively usable in the major foreign exchange markets. These currencies shall be defined in the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority in accordance with prevailing international monetary practice. Except as provided in article 6 (m) no State Party shall maintain or impose restrictions on the holding, use or exchange by the Enterprise of these funds.
- (h) A "debt guarantee" shall mean a promise of each State Party to creditors of the Enterprise to pay, <u>pro rata</u> in accordance with the appropriate scale, the financial obligations of the Enterprise covered by the guarantee following notice by the creditors to the State Party of a default by the Enterprise. Procedures for the payment of those obligations shall be in conformity with the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.
- 4. The funds, assets and expenses of the Enterprise shall be kept separate from those of the Authority. The provisions of this article shall not prevent the Enterprise from making arrangements with the Authority regarding facilities, personnel and services and arrangements for reimbursement of administrative expenses paid in the first instance by either organization on behalf of the other.
- 5. The records, books and accounts of the Enterprise, including its annual financial statements, shall be audited annually by an independent auditor to be appointed by the Council.

#### Article 12 Operations

- 1. The Enterprise shall propose to the Council projects for carrying out activities in accordance with article 170 of Part XI of this Convention. Such proposals shall include a formal written plan of work for activities in the Area in accordance with article 153, paragraph 3, of Part XI of this Convention, and all such other information and data as may be required from time to time for its appraisal by the Technical Commission and approval by the Council.
- 2. Upon approval by the Council, the Enterprise shall execute the project on the basis of the formal written plan of work referred to in paragraph 1.

- 3. (a) To the extent that the Enterprise does not at any time possess the goods and services required for its operations, it may procure and employ them. Procurement of goods and services required by the Enterprise shall be effected by the award of contracts, based on response to invitations to tender, to bidders offering the best combination of quality, price and most favourable delivery time.
- (b) If there is more than one bid offering such a combination, the contract shall be awarded in accordance with the following:
  - (i) The principle of non-discrimination on the basis of political or other considerations not relevant to the carrying out of operations with due diligence and efficiency;
  - (ii) Guidelines approved by the Council with regard to the preferences to be accorded to goods and services originating in the developing States, including the land-locked or otherwise geographically disadvantaged among them.
- (c) The Governing Board may adopt rules determining the special circumstances in which the requirement of invitations to bid may in the best interests of the Enterprise be dispensed with.
- 4. The Enterprise shall have title to all minerals and processed substances produced by it.
- 5. The Enterprise shall sell its products on a non-discriminatory basis. It shall not give non-commercial discounts.
- 6. Without prejudice to any general or special power conferred on the Enterprise under any other provision of this Convention, the Enterprise shall exercise such powers incidental to its business as shall be necessary.
- 7. The Enterprise shall not interfere in the political affairs of any member; nor shall it be influenced in its decisions by the political character of the member or members concerned. Only commercial considerations shall be relevant to its decisions, and these considerations shall be weighed impartially in order to carry out the purposes specified in article 1.

# Article 13 Legal status, immunities and privileges

- 1. To enable the Enterprise to perform its functions, the status, immunities and privileges set forth herein shall be accorded to the Enterprise in the territories of States Parties. To give effect to this principle the Enterprise and States Parties may, where necessary, enter into special agreements.
- 2. The Enterprise shall have such legal capacity as is necessary for the performance of its functions and the fulfilment of its purposes and, in particular, the capacity:
- (a) To enter into contracts, joint arrangements, or other arrangements, including agreements with States and international organizations;
  - (b) To acquire, lease, hold and dispose of immovable and movable property;
  - (c) To be a party to legal proceedings in its own name.

- 3. Actions may be brought against the Enterprise only in a court of competent jurisdiction in the territories of a member in which the Enterprise has an office, has appointed an agent for the purpose of accepting service or notice of process, has entered into a contract for goods or services, has issued securities or is otherwise engaged in commercial activity. The property and assets of the Enterprise, wheresoever located and by whomsoever held, shall be immune from all forms of seizure, attachment or execution before the delivery of final judgement against the Enterprise.
- 4. (a) The property and assets of the Enterprise, wheresoever located and by whomsoever held, shall be immune from confiscation, expropriation, requisition, and any other form of seizure by executive or legislative action.
- (b) The property and assets of the Enterprise, wheresoever located and by whomsoever held, shall be free from discriminatory restrictions, regulations, controls and moratoria of any nature.
- (c) The Enterprise and its employees shall respect local laws and regulations in any State or territory in which the Enterprise or its employees may do business or otherwise act.
- (d) States Parties shall assure that the Enterprise enjoys all rights, immunities and privileges afforded by States to entities conducting business within such States. These rights, immunities and privileges shall be afforded the Enterprise on no less favourable a basis than afforded by States to similarly engaged commercial entities. Where special privileges are provided by States for developing States or their commercial entities, the Enterprise shall enjoy such privileges on a similarly preferential basis.
- (e) States may provide special incentives, rights, privileges and immunities to the Enterprise without the obligation to provide such incentives, rights, privileges, or immunities to other commercial entities.
- 5. The Enterprise shall negotiate with the host countries in which its offices and facilities are located for exemption from direct and indirect taxation.
- 6. Each member shall take such action as is necessary for the purpose of making effective in terms of its own law the principles set forth herein in this annex and shall inform the Enterprise of the detailed action which it has taken.
- 7. The Enterprise in its discretion may waive any of the privileges and immunities conferred under this article or in the special agreements referred to in paragraph 1 to such extent and upon such conditions as it may determine.

AHIEX V

Conciliation

SECTION 1

# Conciliation procedure in accordance with section I of Part XV

# Article 1 Institution of proceedings

If the parties to a dispute have agreed, in accordance with article 284 of Part XV of this Convention to submit the dispute to the procedure under Section 1 of this annex, any party to such dispute may institute the proceedings by notification addressed to the other party or parties to the dispute.

#### Article 2 List of conciliators

A list of conciliators shall be drawn up and maintained by the Secretary-General of the United Nations. Every State Party shall be entitled to nominate four conciliators, each of whom shall be a person enjoying the highest reputation for fairness, competence and integrity. The names of the persons so nominated shall constitute the list. If at any time the conciliators nominated by a State Party in the list so constituted shall be less than four, that State Party shall be entitled to make further nominations as necessary. The name of a conciliator shall remain on the list until withdrawn by the party which made the nomination, provided that such conciliator shall continue to serve on any conciliation commission for which that conciliator has been chosen until the completion of the proceedings before that Commission.

# Article 3 Constitution of Conciliation Commission

The Conciliation Commission shall, unless the parties otherwise agree, be constituted as follows:

- (a) Subject to the provisions of subparagraph (g), the Conciliation Commission shall consist of five members.
- (b) The party submitting the dispute to conciliation shall appoint two conciliators to be chosen preferably from the list, one of whom may be its national, unless the parties otherwise agree. Such appointments shall be included in the notification under article 1.
- (c) The other party to the dispute shall appoint two conciliators in the same manner within 21 days of receipt of notification under article 1. If the appointments are not made within the prescribed period, the party which submitted the dispute to conciliation may, within one week of the expiration of the prescribed period, either terminate the proceedings by notification addressed to the other party or request the Secretary-General to make the appointments in accordance with subparagraph (e)

- (d) Within 30 days following the date of the last of their own appointment, the four conciliators shall appoint a fifth conciliator chosen from the list, who shall be chairman. If the appointment is not made within the prescribed period, either party may, within one week of the expiration of the prescribed period, request the Secretary-General to make the appointment in accordance with subparagraph (e).
- (e) Upon the request of a party to the dispute in accordance with subparagraphs (c) or (d), the Secretary-General of the United Nations shall make the necessary appointments within 30 days of the receipt of such request. The Secretary-General shall make such appointments from the list referred to in article 2 and in consultation with the parties to the dispute.
- (f) Any vacancy shall be filled in the manner prescribed for the initial appointment.
- (g) Parties in the same interest shall appoint two conciliators jointly by agreement. Where there are several parties having separate interests, or where there is disagreement as to whether they are of the same interest, each of them shall appoint one conciliator.
- (h) In disputes involving more than two parties, the provisions of subparagraphs (a) to (f) shall apply to the maximum extent possible.

# Article 4 Procedure to be adopted

The Conciliation Commission shall, unless the parties otherwise agree, decide its own procedure. The Commission, with the consent of the parties to the dispute, may invite any State Party to submit to it its views orally or in writing. Recommendations of the Commission and procedural decisions shall be made by a majority vote of its members.

## Article 5 Amicable settlement

The Commission may draw the attention of the parties to the dispute to any measures which might facilitate an amicable settlement.

### Article 6 Functions of the Commission

The Commission shall hear the parties, examine their claims and objections, and make proposals to the parties with a view to reaching an amicable settlement.

#### Article 7 Report

- 1. The Commission shall report within 12 months of its constitution. Its report shall record any agreements reached and, failing agreement, its conclusions on all questions of fact or law relevant to the matter in dispute and such recommendations as the Commission may deem appropriate for an amicable settlement of the dispute. The report shall be deposited with the Secretary-General of the United Nations and shall immediately be transmitted by him to the parties to the dispute.
- 2. The report of the Commission, including any conclusions or recommendations, shall not be binding upon the parties.

#### Article 8 Termination

The conciliation procedure shall be deemed terminated when a settlement has been reached, when the parties have accepted or one party has rejected the recommendations of the report by notification addressed to the Secretary-General, or when a period of three months has expired from the date of transmission of the report to the parties.

# Article 9 Facilities, fees and expenses

The fees and expenses of the Commission shall be borne by the parties to the dispute.

# Article 10 Right of parties to vary procedure

The parties to the dispute may by agreement vary any provision of this annex.

#### SECTION 2

# Obligatory submission to conciliation procedure in accordance with Section 3 of Part XV at the request of any party

# Article 11 Institution of proceedings

- 1. Any party to a dispute, which in accordance with Section 3 of Part XV may be submitted to the procedures under this Section, may institute the proceedings by notification addressed to the other party or parties to the dispute.
- 2. The other party or parties to the dispute, notified under paragraph 1, shall be obliged to submit to such proceedings.

# Article 12 Application of Section 1

The provisions of articles 2 to 10 of section 1 shall apply subject to the provisions of this section.

# Article 13 Failure to reply or refusal to submit to conciliation

The failure of a party or parties to the dispute to reply to notification of institution of proceedings or the refusal to submit to such proceedings shall not constitute an impediment to the proceedings.

### Article 14 Competence

Any disagreement as to whether the Conciliation Commission acting in accordance with this section has competence over any dispute submitted to it shall be determined by the Conciliation Commission.

#### ANNEX VI

Statute of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea

### Article 1 General provisions

- 1. The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea shall be constituted and shall function in accordance with the provisions of this Convention and this Statute.
  - 2. The seat of the Tribunal shall be at \_\_\_\_\_. 1/
- 3. The Tribunal shall have the right to sit and exercise its functions elsewhere whenever the Tribunal considers it desirable.
- 4. Any reference of a dispute to the Tribunal shall be subject to the provisions of Parts XI and XV.

#### SECTION 1. ORGANIZATION OF THE TRIBUNAL

### Article 2 Composition of Tribunal

- 1. The Tribunal shall be composed of a body of 21 independent members, elected from among persons enjoying the highest reputation for fairness and integrity and of recognized competence in matters relating to the law of the sea.
- 2. In the Tribunal as a whole the representation of the principal legal systems of the world and equitable geographical distribution shall be assured.

## Article 3 Election of members

- l. No two members of the Tribunal may be nationals of the same State, and a person who for the purposes of membership in the Tribunal could be regarded as a national of more than one State shall be deemed to be a national of the one in which he ordinarily exercises civil and political rights.
- 2. There shall be not less than three members from each geographical group as established by the General Assembly of the United Nations.

### Article 4 Procedure for nomination and election

1. Each State Party may nominate not more than two persons having the qualifications prescribed in article 2. The members of the Tribunal shall be elected from the list of persons thus nominated.

<sup>1/</sup> Bermuda, Portugal and Yugoslavia have proposed that the seat of the Tribunal be located in their countries.

- 2. At least three months before the date of the election, the Secretary-General of the United Nations in the case of the first election and the Registrar of the Tribunal in the case of subsequent elections shall address a written invitation to the States Parties to submit their nominations for members of the Tribunal within two months. He shall prepare a list in alphabetical order of all the persons thus nominated, with an indication of the States Parties which have nominated them, and shall submit it to the States Parties before the seventh day of the last month before the date of each election.
- 3. The first election shall be held within six months of the date of entry into force of this Convention.
- 4. Elections of the members of the Tribunal shall be by secret ballot. They shall be held at a meeting of the States Parties convened by the Secretary-General of the United Nations in the case of the first election and by procedure agreed to by the States Parties in the case of subsequent elections. At that meeting, for which two thirds of the States Parties shall constitute a quorum, the persons elected to the Tribunal shall be those nominees who obtain the largest number of votes and a two-thirds majority of votes of the States Parties present and voting, provided that such majority shall include at least a majority of the States Parties.

### Article 5 Term of office

- 1. The members of the Tribunal shall be elected for nine years and may be re-elected; provided, however, that of the members elected at the first election, the terms of seven members shall expire at the end of three years and the terms of seven more members shall expire at the end of six years.
- 2. The members of the Tribunal whose terms are to expire at the end of the above-mentioned initial periods of three and six years shall be chosen by lots to be drawn by the Secretary-General of the United Nations immediately after the first election has been completed.
- 3. The members of the Tribunal shall continue to discharge their duties until their places have been filled. Though replaced, they shall finish any proceedings which they may have begun at the time of their replacement.
- 4. In the case of the resignation of a member of the Tribunal, the resignation shall be addressed to the President of the Tribunal. The place becomes vacant on the receipt of the letter of resignation.

### Article 6 Vacancies

- 1. Vacancies shall be filled by the same method as that laid down for the first election, subject to the following provision: the Registrar shall, within one month of the occurrence of the vacancy, proceed to issue the invitations provided for in article 4, and the date of the election shall be fixed by the President of the Tribunal after consultation with States Parties.
- 2. A member of the Tribunal elected to replace a member whose term of office has not expired shall hold office for the remainder of the term of his predecessor.

### Article 7 Conditions relating to interests of members

- 1. No member of the Tribunal may exercise any political or administrative function, or associate actively with or be financially interested in any of the operations of any enterprise concerned with the exploration or exploitation of the resources of the sea or the sea-bed or other commercial use of the sea or the sea-bed.
- 2. No member of the Tribunal may act as agent, counsel, or advocate in any case.
- 3. Any doubt on these points shall be decided by a majority of the other members of the Tribunal present.

# Article 8 Conditions relating to participation of members

- 1. No member may participate in the decision of any case in which he has previously taken part as agent, counsel, or advocate for one of the parties, or as a member of a national or international court, or in any other capacity.
- 2. If, for some special reason, a member of the Tribunal considers that he should not take part in the decision of a particular case, he shall so inform the President of the Tribunal.
- 3. If the President considers that for some special reason one of the members of the Tribunal should not sit in a particular case, he shall give him notice accordingly.
- 4. Any doubt on this point shall be decided by a majority of the other members of the Tribunal present.

### Article 9 Consequences of ceasing to fulfil conditions

If, in the unanimous opinion of the other members of the Tribunal, a member has ceased to fulfil the required conditions, the President of the Tribunal shall declare the seat vacant.

# Article 10 Diplomatic privileges and immunities

The members of the Tribunal, when engaged in the business of the Tribunal, shall enjoy diplomatic privileges and immunities.

# Article 11 Declaration by members

Every member of the Tribunal shall, before taking up his duties, make a solemn declaration in open session that he will exercise his powers impartially and conscientiously.

# Article 12 President, Vice-President and Registrar

- 1. The Tribunal shall elect its President and Vice-President for three years; they may be re-elected.
- 2. The Tribunal shall appoint its Registrar and may provide for the appointment of such other officers as may be necessary.
  - 3. The President and the Registrar shall reside at the seat of the Tribunal.

#### Article 13 Quorum

- 1. All available members shall sit, but a quorum of 11 members shall be required to constitute the Tribunal.
- 2. Subject to the provisions of article 17, the Tribunal shall determine which members are available to constitute the Tribunal for the consideration of a particular dispute, having regard to the effective functioning of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber and the special chambers as provided in articles 14 and 15.
- 3. All disputes and applications submitted to the Tribunal shall be heard and determined by the Tribunal, unless article 14 applies, or the parties request that it shall be dealt with in accordance with article 15.

# Article 14 Establishment of a Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber

A Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber shall be established in accordance with the provisions of section 4. Its jurisdiction, powers and functions shall be as provided for in section 6 of Part XI.

#### Article 15 Special chambers

- l. The Tribunal may form such chambers, composed of three or more members, as the Tribunal may deem necessary for dealing with particular categories of disputes.
- 2. The Tribunal shall form a chamber for dealing with a particular dispute submitted to it if the parties so request. The composition of such a chamber shall be determined by the Tribunal with the approval of the parties.
- 3. With a view to the speedy dispatch of business, the Tribunal shall form annually a chamber composed of five members which may hear and determine disputes by summary procedure. Two alternative members shall be selected for the purpose of replacing members who are unable to participate in a particular proceeding.
- 4. Disputes shall be heard and determined by the chambers provided for in this article if the parties so request.
- 5. A judgement given by any of the chambers provided for in this article and in article 14 shall be considered as rendered by the Tribunal.

#### Article 16 Rules of Tribunal

The Tribunal shall frame rules for carrying out its functions. In particular it shall lay down rules of procedure.

# Article 17 Nationality of members

- 1. Hembers of the nationality of any of the parties to a dispute shall retain their right to participate as members of the Tribunal.
- 2. If the Tribunal hearing any dispute includes a member of the nationality of one of the parties, any other party to the dispute may choose a person to participate as a member of the Tribunal.
- 3. If the Tribunal hearing does not include a member of the nationality of the parties, each of these parties may proceed to choose a member as provided in paragraph 2.
- 4. The provisions of this article shall apply to articles 14 and 15. In such cases, the President, in consultation with the parties, shall request specified members of the Tribunal forming the chamber, as many as necessary, to give place to the members of the Tribunal of the nationality of the parties concerned, and, failing such, or if they are unable to be present, to the members specially chosen by the parties.
- 5. Should there be several parties in the same interest, they shall, for the purpose of the preceding provisions, be reckoned as one party only. Any doubt on this point shall be settled by the decision of the Tribunal.
- 6. Members chosen as laid down in paragraphs 2, 3 and 4 shall fulfil the conditions required by articles 2, 8 and 11. They shall participate in the decision on terms of complete equality with their colleagues.

# Article 18 Remuneration of members

- 1. Each member of the Tribunal shall receive an annual allowance and, for each day on which he exercises his functions, a special allowance, provided that in any year the total sum payable to any member as special allowance shall not exceed the amount of the annual allowance.
  - 2. The President shall receive a special annual allowance.
- 3. The Vice-President shall receive a special allowance for each day on which he acts as President.
- 4. The members chosen under article 17, other than members of the Tribunal, shall receive compensation for each day on which they exercise their functions.
- 5. These allowances and compensation shall be fixed from time to time at a meeting of the States Parties, taking into account the workload of the Tribunal. They may not be decreased during the term of office.

- 6. The salary of the Registrar shall be fixed at a meeting of the States Parties on the proposal of the Tribunal.
- 7. Regulations made at the meeting of the States Parties shall fix the conditions under which retirement pensions may be given to members of the Tribunal and to the Registrar, and the conditions under which members of the Tribunal and Registrar shall have their travelling expenses refunded.
- 8. The above salaries, allowances, and compensation shall be free of all taxation.

# Article 19 Expenses of the Tribunal

- 1. The expenses of the Tribunal shall be borne by the States Parties and by the Authority on such terms and in such manner as shall be decided at a meeting of the States Parties.
- 2. When an entity other than a State Party or the Authority is a party to a dispute submitted to it, the Tribunal shall fix the amount which that party is to contribute towards the expenses of the Tribunal.

#### SECTION 2. COMPETENCE OF THE TRIBUNAL

### Article 20 Parties before the Tribunal

- 1. States Parties may be parties before the Tribunal.
- 2. Entities other than States Parties may be parties before the Tribunal in any case expressly provided for in Part XI, or in accordance with any other agreement conferring jurisdiction on the Tribunal and accepted by all the parties to the dispute.

#### Article 21 Access to the Tribunal

The Tribunal shall be open to the States Parties. It shall be open to entities other than States Parties in any case provided for in Part XI or in accordance with any other agreement conferring jurisdiction on the Tribunal and accepted by all the parties to any dispute submitted to the Tribunal.

#### Article 22 Jurisdiction

The jurisdiction of the Tribunal shall comprise all disputes and applications submitted to it in accordance with this Convention and all matters specifically provided for in any other agreement which confers jurisdiction on the Tribunal.

### Article 23 Reference of disputes subject to other agreements

If all the parties to a treaty or convention already in force and relating to the subject-matter covered by this Convention so agree, any disputes relating to the interpretation or application of such treaty or convention may, in accordance with such agreement, be submitted to the Tribunal.

#### Article 24 Applicable law

The Tribunal shall decide all disputes and applications in accordance with article 293 of Part XV of this Convention.

#### SECTION 3. PROCEDURE

# Article 25 Institution of proceedings

- l. Disputes may be submitted to the Tribunal, as the case may be, either by a written application addressed by a party or parties to the dispute, or by the notification of any special agreement between the parties to the dispute, to the Registrar. In either case the subject of the dispute and the parties shall be indicated.
  - 2. The Registrar shall forthwith communicate the application to all concerned.
  - 3. He shall also notify all States Parties.

### Article 26 Provisional measures

- 1. In accordance with article 290 of Part XV of this Convention, the Tribunal and its Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber shall have the power to prescribe provisional measures.
- 2. If the Tribunal is not in session, or a sufficient number of members are not available to constitute a quorum, the provisional measures shall be prescribed by the chamber of summary procedure to be established under article 15, paragraph 3. Notwithstanding article 15, paragraph 4, such provisional measures may be adopted at the request of any party to the dispute. They shall be subject to review and revision by the Tribunal.

#### Article 27 Hearing

- 1. The hearing shall be under the control of the President or, if he is not able to preside, of the Vice-President; if neither is able to preside, the senior judge present shall preside.
- 2. The hearing shall be public, unless the Tribunal shall decide otherwise, or unless the parties demand that the public be not admitted.

### Article 28 Conduct of case

The Tribunal shall make orders for the conduct of the case, shall decide the form and time in which each party must present its arguments, and make all arrangements connected with the receiving of evidence.

## Article 29 Default of appearance

When one of the parties does not appear before the Tribunal or fails to defend its case, the other party may request the Tribunal to continue the proceedings and make its decision. Absence or default of a party shall not constitute an impediment to the proceedings. Before making its decision, the Tribunal must satisfy itself not only that it has jurisdiction over the dispute, but also that the claim is well founded in fact and law.

### Article 30 Majority for decision

- 1. All questions shall be decided by a majority of the members of the Tribunal who are present.
- 2. In the event of an equality of votes, the President or the member who acts in his place shall have a casting vote.

#### Article 31 Judgement

- 1. The judgement shall state the reasons on which it is based.
- 2. It shall contain the names of the members of the Tribunal who have taken part in the decision.
- 3. If the judgement does not represent in whole or in part the unanimous opinion of the members of the Tribunal, any member shall be entitled to deliver a separate opinion.
- 4. The judgement shall be signed by the President and by the Registrar. It shall be read in open court, due notice having been given to the parties to the dispute.

# Article 32 Request to intervene

- 1. Should a State Party consider that it has an interest of a legal nature which may be affected by the decision in any dispute, it may submit a request to the Tribunal to be permitted to intervene.
  - 2. It shall be for the Tribunal to decide upon this request.
- 3. If an application to intervene is granted, the decision of the Tribunal in respect of that dispute will be binding upon the applicant in so far as it refers to matters in respect of which that party intervened.

# Article 33 Cases of interpretation or application

- 1. Whenever the interpretation or application of this Convention is in question, the Registrar shall notify all States Parties forthwith.
- 2. Whenever, pursuant to article 22 or 23, the interpretation or application of an international agreement is in question, the Registrar shall notify all parties to the agreement.

3. Every party so notified has the right to intervene in the proceedings; but if it uses this right, the construction given by the judgement will be equally binding upon it.

# Article 34 Finality and binding force of decisions

- 1. The decision of the Tribunal is final and shall be complied with by all the parties to the dispute.
- 2. Such decision shall have no binding force except between the parties and in respect of that particular dispute.
- 3. In the event of dispute as to the meaning or scope of the decision, the Tribunal shall construe it upon the request of any party.

### Article 35 Costs

Unless otherwise decided by the Tribunal, each party shall bear its own costs.

#### SECTION 4. SEA-BED DISPUTES CHAMBER

# Article 36 Composition of the Chamber

- 1. The Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber established in accordance with article 14 shall be composed of 11 members, selected by a majority of the members of the Tribunal from among its members.
- 2. In the selection of the members of the Chamber, the representation of the principal legal systems of the world and equitable geographical distribution shall be assured. The Assembly of the Authority may adopt recommendations of a general nature relating to such representation and distribution.
- 3. The members of the Chamber shall be selected every three years and may be selected for a second term.
- 4. The Chamber shall elect its President from among its members, who shall serve for the period for which the Chamber has been selected.
- 5. If any proceedings are still pending at the end of any three-year period for which the Chamber has been selected, the Chamber shall complete the proceedings in its original composition.
- 6. Upon the occurrence of a vacancy in the Chamber, the Tribunal shall select a successor from among its members who shall hold office for the remainder of the term of his predecessor.
  - 7. A quorum of seven members shall be required to constitute the Chamber.

# Article 37 Ad Hoc Chambers of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber

- 1. The Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber shall form an ad hoc chamber, composed of three of its members, for dealing with a particular dispute submitted to it in accordance with article 188, paragraph 1 (b), of Part XI of this Convention. The composition of such a chamber shall be determined by the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber with the approval of the parties.
- 2. If the parties do not agree on the composition of an ad hoc chamber referred to in paragraph 1, each party to the dispute shall appoint one member, and the remaining member shall be appointed by them in agreement. If they disagree, or if any party fails to make an appointment, the President of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber shall promptly make such appointment or appointments from among the members of the Sea-Bed Disputes Chamber, after consultation with the parties.
- 3. Members of the <u>ad hoc</u> chamber must not be in the service of, or nationals of, any of the parties to the dispute.

#### Article 38 Access

The Chamber shall be open to the States Parties, to the Authority and to nationals of States Parties in accordance with the provisions of section 6 of Part XI.

### Article 39 Applicable law

In addition to the provisions of article 293 of Part XV of this Convention, the Chamber shall apply:

- (a) The rules, regulations and procedures adopted by the Assembly or the Council of the Authority in accordance with this Convention; and
- (b) The terms of any contracts concerning activities in the Area in any matter relating to such contract.

#### Article 40 Enforcement of decisions of the Chamber

The decisions of the Chamber shall be enforceable in the territories of the States Parties in the same manner as judgements or orders of the highest court of the State Party where the enforcement is sought.

# Article 41 Applicability of the procedure of the Tribunal to the Chamber

- 1. The provisions of this annex which are not incompatible with this section shall apply to the Chamber.
- 2. In the exercise of its functions relating to advisory opinions, the Chamber shall be guided by the provisions of this annex relating to procedure before the Tribunal to the extent to which it recognizes them to be applicable.

#### SECTION 5. AMENDMENTS

#### Article 42 Amendments

- 1. Amendments to this annex, other than amendments to Section 4, may only be adopted in accordance with article 313 or by consensus at a conference convened in accordance with this Convention.
- 2. Amendments to Section 4 of this annex may only be adopted by the procedure applicable to amendments relating exclusively to activities in the Area.
- 3. The Tribunal shall have power to propose such amendments to this Statute as it may deem necessary, through written communications to the States Parties, for consideration in conformity with the provisions of paragraphs 1 and 2 above.

#### ANNEX VII

#### Arbitration

# Article 1 Institution of proceedings

Subject to the provisions of Part XV, any party to a dispute may submit the dispute to the arbitration procedure provided for in this annex by notification addressed to the other party or parties to the dispute.

#### Article 2 List of arbitrators

A list of arbitrators shall be drawn up and maintained by the Secretary-General of the United Nations. Every State Party shall be entitled to nominate four arbitrators, each of whom shall be a person experienced in maritime affairs and enjoying the highest reputation for fairness, competence and integrity. The names of the persons so nominated shall constitute the list. If at any time the arbitrators nominated by a State Party in the list so constituted shall be less than four, that State Party shall be entitled to make further nominations as necessary. The name of an arbitrator shall remain on the list until withdrawn by the party which made the nomination, provided that such arbitrator shall continue to serve until the completion of any case in which that arbitrator has begun to serve.

# Article 3 Constitution of arbitral tribunal

For the purpose of proceedings under this annex, the arbitral tribunal shall, unless the parties otherwise agree, be constituted as follows:

- (a) Subject to the provisions of subparagraph (g), the arbitral tribunal shall consist of five members. Each party to the dispute shall appoint one member, who shall be chosen preferably from the list and may be its national. In the case of the party requesting arbitration, such appointment shall be made at the time of the request. The other three members shall be appointed by agreement of the parties and shall be chosen preferably from the list and shall be nationals of third States, unless the parties otherwise agree. The parties to the dispute shall appoint the President of the arbitral tribunal from among these three members.
- (b) The party requesting arbitration shall, at the time of making the request, submit a statement of its claim and the grounds on which such claim is based.
- (c) Should the other party to the dispute fail to appoint a member within a period of 30 days from the date of receipt of the request for arbitration, the appointment shall be made in accordance with subparagraph (e), at the request of the party which submitted the dispute to arbitration. Such request shall be made within two weeks of the expiry of the aforementioned period of 30 days.
- (d) If, within a period of 60 days from the date of receipt of the request for arbitration, the parties are unable to reach agreement on the appointment of one or more of the members of the tribunal to be designated jointly, or on the appointment of the President, the remaining appointment or appointments shall be made in accordance with subparagraph (e), at the request of a party to the dispute. Such request shall be made within two weeks of the expiry of the aforementioned period of 60 days.

- (e) Unless the parties agree that any appointment under subparagraphs (c) and (d) be made by some person or a third State chosen by the parties, the President of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea shall make such appointment. If the President is unable to act under this subparagraph or is a national of one of the parties to the dispute, the appointment shall be made by the next senior member of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea who is available and is not a national of one of the parties. The appointments referred to in this subparagraph shall be made from the list of arbitrators within a period of 30 days of the receipt of the request and in consultation with the parties. The members so appointed must be of different nationalities and must not be in the service of, ordinarily resident in the territory of, or nationals of, any of the parties to the dispute.
- (f) Vacancies which may occur as a result of death, resignation or any other cause shall be filled in such manner as provided for original appointments.
- (g) Parties in the same interest shall appoint one member of the tribunal jointly by agreement. Where there are several parties having separate interests or where there is disagreement as to whether they are of the same interest, each of them shall appoint one member of the tribunal. The number of members of the tribunal appointed separately by the parties shall always be smaller by one than the number of members of the tribunal to be appointed jointly by the parties.
- (h) In disputes involving more than two parties, the provisions of subparagraphs (a) to (f) shall apply to the maximum extent possible.

# Article 4 Functions of arbitral tribunal

An arbitral tribunal constituted under article 3 shall function in accordance with the provisions of this Convention and of this annex.

## Article 5 Procedure to be adopted

In the absence of an agreement to the contrary between the parties to the dispute, the arbitral tribunal shall lay down its own procedure assuring to each party a full opportunity to be heard and to present its case.

# Article 6 Duties of parties to a dispute

The parties to the dispute shall facilitate the work of the arbitral tribunal and, in particular, in accordance with their law and using all means at their disposal, shall:

- (a) Provide the tribunal with all relevant documents, facilities and information; and
- (b) Enable the tribunal when necessary to summon and receive the evidence of witnesses or experts and to visit the localities in question.

#### Article 7 Expenses

Unless the arbitral tribunal determines otherwise because of the particular circumstances of the case, the expenses of the tribunal, including the remuneration of its members, shall be borne by the parties to the dispute in equal shares.

# Article 8 Required majority for decisions

Decisions of the arbitral tribunal shall be taken by a majority vote of its members. The absence or abstention of less than half of the members shall not constitute an impediment to the tribunal reaching a decision. In the event of an equality of votes, the President shall have a casting vote.

# Article 9 Default of appearance

When one of the parties to the dispute does not appear before the arbitral tribunal or fails to defend its case, the other party may request the tribunal to continue the proceedings and to make its award. Absence or default of a party shall not constitute an impediment to the proceedings. Before making its award, the arbitral tribunal must satisfy itself not only that it has jurisdiction over the dispute but also that the claim is well founded in fact and law.

#### Article 10 Award

The award of the arbitral tribunal shall be confined to the subject-matter of the dispute, and state the reasons on which it is based. It shall contain the names of the members who have participated and the date of the award. Any member of the tribunal may attach a separate or dissenting opinion to the award.

#### Article 11 Finality of award

The award shall be final and without appeal, unless the parties to the dispute have agreed in advance to an appellate procedure. It shall be complied with by all the parties to the dispute.

### Article 12 Interpretation or implementation of award

- l. Any controversy which may arise between the parties to the dispute as regards the interpretation or manner of implementation of the award may be submitted by either party for decision to the arbitral tribunal which made the award. For this purpose, any vacancy in the tribunal shall be filled in the manner provided for in the original appointments of the members of the tribunal.
- 2. Any such controversy may be submitted to another court or tribunal under article 287 of Part XV of this Convention by agreement of all the parties to the dispute.

### Article 13 Application to entities other than States Parties

The provisions of this annex shall apply <u>mutatis mutandis</u> to any dispute involving entities other than States Parties.

#### ANNEX VIII

Special arbitration procedure

### Article 1 Institution of proceedings

Subject to the provisions of Part XV, any party to a dispute concerning the interpretation or application of the articles of this Convention relating to (1) fisheries, (2) protection and preservation of the marine environment, (3) marine scientific research, and (4) navigation, including pollution from vessels and by dumping, may submit the dispute to the special arbitration procedure provided for in this annex by notification addressed to the other party or parties to the dispute.

#### Article 2 Lists of experts

Separate lists of experts shall be established and maintained in respect of each of the fields of (1) fisheries, (2) protection and preservation of the marine environment, (3) marine scientific research, and (4) navigation, including pollution from vessels and by dumping. The lists of experts shall be drawn up and maintained, in the field of fisheries by the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, in the field of protection and preservation of the marine environment by the United Nations Environment Programme, in the field of marine scientific research by the Inter-Governmental Oceanographic Commission, in the field of navigation, including pollution from vessels and by dumping, by the Inter-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organization, or in each case by the appropriate subsidiary body concerned to which such organization, programme or commission has delegated this function. Every State Party shall be entitled to nominate two experts in each field whose competence in the legal, scientific or technical aspects of such field is established and generally recognized and who enjoy the highest reputation for fairness and integrity. The names of the persons so nominated in each field shall constitute the appropriate list. If at any time the experts nominated by a State Party in any list so constituted shall be less than two, that State Party shall be entitled to make further nominations as necessary. The name of an expert shall remain on the list until withdrawn by the party which made the nomination, provided that such expert shall continue to serve until the completion of any case in which that expert has begun to serve.

### Article 3 Constitution of special arbitral tribunal

For the purpose of proceedings under this annex, a special arbitral tribunal shall, unless the parties otherwise agree, be constituted as follows:

- (a) Subject to the provisions of subparagraph (g), the special arbitral tribunal shall consist of five members. Each party to the dispute shall appoint two members, one of whom may be its national, to be chosen preferably from the appropriate list or lists relating to the matters in dispute. The parties to the dispute shall by agreement appoint the President of the special arbitral tribunal who shall be chosen preferably from the appropriate list and shall be a national of a third State, unless the parties otherwise agree.
- (b) The party requesting special arbitration shall, at the time of making the request, appoint its members and submit a statement of its claim and the grounds on which such claim is based.

- (c) Should the other party to the dispute fail to appoint its members within a period of 30 days from the date of receipt of the request for special arbitration, the appointments shall be made in accordance with subparagraph (e), at the request of the party which submitted the dispute to arbitration. Such request shall be made within two weeks of the expiry of the aforementioned period of 30 days.
- (d) If, within a period of 30 days from the date of receipt of the request for special arbitration, the parties are unable to reach agreement on the appointment of the President, such appointment shall be made in accordance with subparagraph (e), at the request of a party to the dispute. Such request shall be made within two weeks of the expiry of the aforementioned period of 30 days.
- (e) Unless the parties agree that any appointment under subparagraphs (c) and (d) be made by some person of a third State chosen by the parties, the Secretary-General of the United Nations shall make such appointment, in consultation with the parties to the dispute and the appropriate international intergovernmental organization. The appointments referred to in this subparagraph shall be made from the appropriate list or lists of experts within a period of 30 days of the receipt of the request. The members so appointed must be of different nationalities and must not be in the service of, ordinarily resident in the territory of, or nationals of, any of the parties to the dispute.
- (f) Vacancies which may occur as a result of death, resignation or any other cause shall be filled in such manner as provided for original appointments.
- (g) Parties in the same interest shall appoint two members of the tribunal jointly by agreement. Where there are several parties having separate interests or where there is disagreement as to whether they are of the same interest, each of them shall appoint one member of the tribunal.
- (h) In disputes involving more than two parties, the provisions of subparagraphs (a) to (f) shall apply to the maximum extent possible.

# Article 4 General provisions

The provisions of articles 4 to 12 of annex VII shall apply <u>mutatis mutandis</u> to the special arbitration procedure under this annex.

#### Article 5 Fact finding

- 1. The parties to a dispute may at any time agree to request a special arbitral tribunal constituted in accordance with article 3 to carry out an inquiry and establish the facts giving rise to any dispute concerning the interpretation or the application of the provisions of this Convention relating to fisheries, protection and preservation of the marine environment, marine scientific research or navigation.
- 2. Unless the parties otherwise agree, the findings of fact of the special arbitral tribunal acting in accordance with paragraph 1, shall be considered as conclusive as between the parties. If all the parties to the dispute so request, the special arbitral tribunal may formulate recommendations which, without having the force of a decision, shall only constitute the basis for a review, by the parties concerned, of the questions giving rise to the dispute.
- 3. Subject to paragraph 2, the special arbitral tribunal shall act in accordance with the preceding provisions of this annex, unless the parties otherwise agree.